

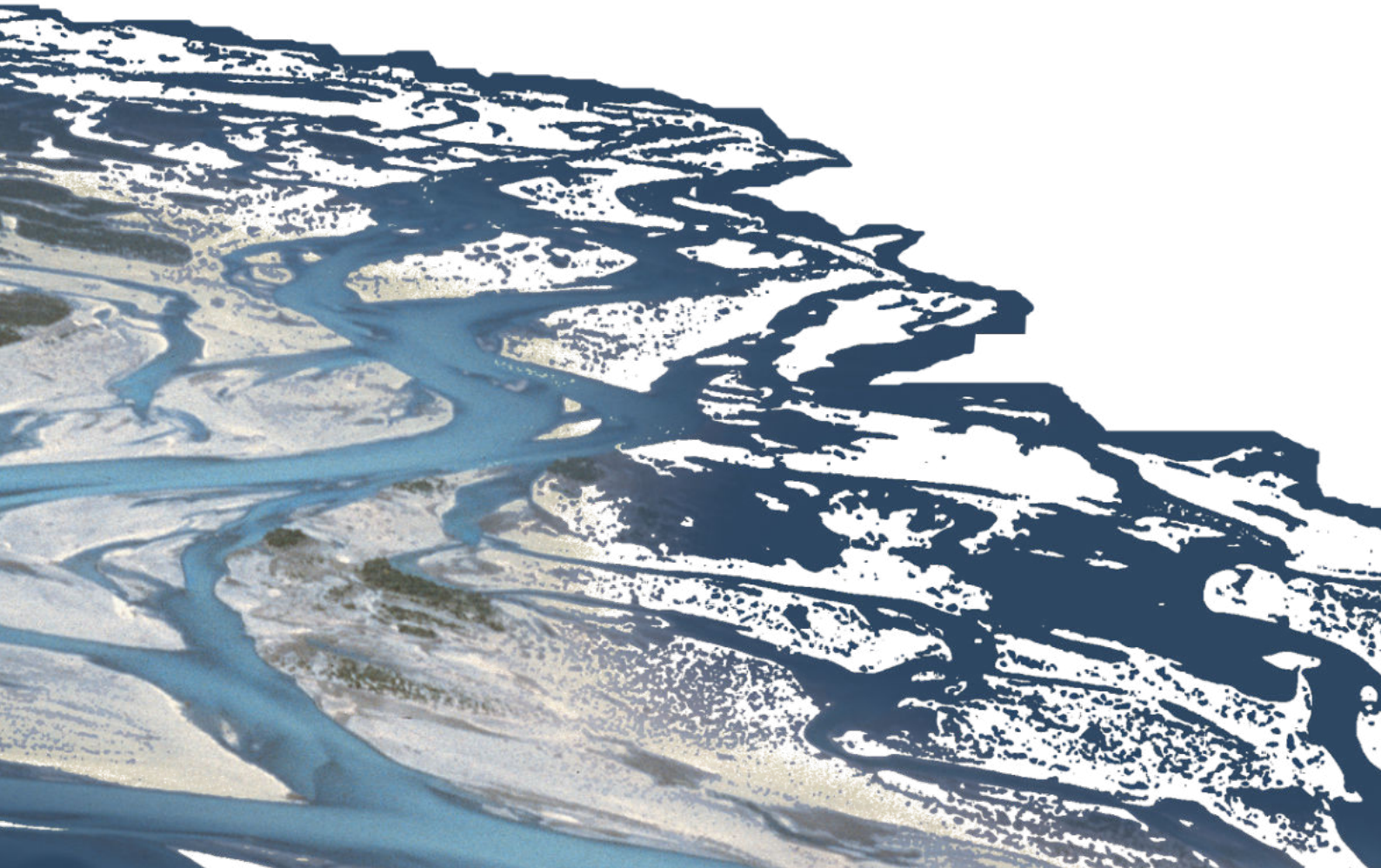
**BASEMENT**

**BASIC SIMULATION ENVIRONMENT  
FOR MODELLING OF ENVIRONMENTAL  
FLOWS AND NATURAL HAZARDS**

---

# **SYSTEM MANUALS**

**VERSION 4.1.0  
JUNE 2024**





---

# Preamble

**VERSION 4.1.0**

*June 2024*

## Credits

### Contributors

Over the years, many enthusiastic engineers and developers have contributed to the development, testing and documentation of BASEMENT. An up-to-date overview of the current development team, along with current and former contributors, can be found on our website:

<https://basement.ethz.ch/people>

**Commissioned and co-financed by**

Swiss Federal Office for the Environment (FOEN)

**Contact**

Website: <https://www.basement.ethz.ch>

User forum: <https://people.ee.ethz.ch/~basement/forum>

ETH Zurich / Laboratory of Hydraulics, Glaciology and Hydrology (VAW)

For list of contributors see <https://www.basement.ethz.ch>



Laboratory of Hydraulics,  
Hydrology and Glaciology



Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich  
Swiss Federal Institute of Technology Zurich

**Citation Advice**

*For System Manuals:*

Vetsch D., Siviglia A., Bacigaluppi P., Brown, A., Bürgler M., Caponi F., Conde D., Gerke E., Halso M., Kammerer S., Koch A., Peter S., Vanzo D., Vonwiller L., Weberndorfer M. 2024. System Manuals of BASEMENT, Version 4.1.0. Laboratory of Hydraulics, Glaciology and Hydrology (VAW). ETH Zurich. Available from <https://www.basement.ethz.ch>. [date of access].

*For Website:*

BASEMENT – Basic Simulation Environment for Computation of Environmental Flow and Natural Hazard Simulation, 2024. <https://www.basement.ethz.ch>

*For Software:*

BASEMENT – Basic Simulation Environment for Computation of Environmental Flows and Natural Hazard Simulation. Version 4.1.0 ETH Zurich, VAW, 2024.

---

# License

## End-User License Agreement (EULA)

THIS EULA IS INTENDED FOR COMMERCIAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL PURPOSES. FOR QUESTIONS RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT PLEASE CONTACT: Dr. David Vetsch, [basement@ethz.ch](mailto:basement@ethz.ch)

This End-User License Agreement (“EULA”) is a legal agreement between you (“You”) (an individual or acting on behalf of a company) and ETH Zurich, Raemistrasse 101, 8092 Zurich (Switzerland) (“ETH Zurich”) for the binary software code of **BASEMENT** and associated media, and may include “online” or electronic documentation (“SOFTWARE”).

The SOFTWARE simulates water flow, sediment and scalar transport in rivers and according interaction in consideration of movable boundaries and morphological changes. Further information and description of the SOFTWARE is available here: <https://basement.ethz.ch/>

The SOFTWARE is protected by copyright laws. The SOFTWARE is hereby licensed, not sold.

In order to install and use the SOFTWARE, You must indicate agreement with the following terms and conditions by clicking “ACCEPT” at the end of this EULA during the installation process.

### 1 LICENSE GRANT

- (i) ETH Zurich hereby grants to You, and in case You are acting on behalf of a company also to the employees of such company, a free-of-charge, single, non-exclusive, world-wide, non-transferable, non-sublicensable right to install, execute and display the SOFTWARE on device(s) running a validly licensed copy of the operating system for which the SOFTWARE was designed. Such rights are granted for commercial and non-commercial purposes.
- (ii) With respect to electronic documents included with the SOFTWARE, You may make an unlimited number of copies (either in hardcopy or electronic form), provided that such copies shall be used only for internal purposes and are not republished or distributed to any third party.

## 2 USE OF RESULTS GENERATED BY THE SOFTWARE

You are allowed to use the content generated by the SOFTWARE (“SOFTWARE RESULTS”) for commercial and non-commercial purposes.

Note that any attribution (e.g. ETH Zurich logo) on the SOFTWARE RESULTS must be retained. You are not allowed to alter, cancel or fade, after a few seconds, such attribution.

## 3 THIRD PARTY CODE

The SOFTWARE may contain other program code from third parties. A list of other third party code and libraries used by this SOFTWARE is available here: <https://basement.ethz.ch/about/thirdpartysoftware>

Their license applies to such third party code and libraries contained herein. Refer to the above internet site for the licenses and copyrights.

## 4 DURATION OF LICENSE AND TERMINATION

This EULA enters into effect on the date of acceptance of this EULA by You. This EULA,

- (i) may be terminated by ETH Zurich at any time for any reason;
- (ii) will terminate automatically without notice from ETH Zurich if (a) You fail to comply with any term(s) of this EULA or (b) You refuse, after the notification in accordance with clause 10 (i), to accept the new EULA term and conditions provided by ETH Zurich;
- (iii) is terminated as soon as You cease to use the SOFTWARE and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the SOFTWARE;

Upon termination pursuant to (i) and (ii), you must cease all use of the SOFTWARE and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the SOFTWARE.

## 5 OBLIGATIONS OF YOU

- (i) You may not remove or alter any copyright notices on any and all copies of the SOFTWARE.
- (ii) You may not distribute or assign the SOFTWARE or any copy thereof to third parties. You may not rent, lease, sell, lend, transfer, redistribute, or sublicense the SOFTWARE to any third party.
- (iii) You may not reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law despite this limitation.
- (iv) You may not reproduce, modify or adapt the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law despite this limitation.
- (v) You must comply with all applicable laws.

## **6 OWNERSHIP**

Except as expressly licensed to You in this EULA, ETH Zurich and its licensors retains all right, title, and interest in and to the SOFTWARE. All title and copyrights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text, and “applets” incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE are owned by ETH Zurich and its licensors. The SOFTWARE is protected by copyright laws. Therefore, You must treat the SOFTWARE like any other copyrighted material. All rights not expressly granted are reserved by ETH Zurich.

## **7 MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPGRADES OR NEW RELEASES**

ETH Zurich has no obligation to provide maintenance, support, upgrades, new releases, enhancements or modifications and disclaims all costs associated with service, repair or correction of the SOFTWARE. If any supplemental software code is provided to You by ETH Zurich, this supplemental software code shall be considered part of the SOFTWARE and is subject to the terms and conditions of this EULA if not otherwise explicitly written. It is expressly acknowledged by You that no rights to receive maintenance, support, upgrades, new releases, enhancements or modifications may be derived from this EULA.

## **8 NO WARRANTY**

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY, AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY SERVICES PERFORMED OR PROVIDED BY THE SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND ETH ZURICH HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND ANY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND OF NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. ETH ZURICH DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN OR SERVICES PERFORMED OR PROVIDED BY THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY ETH ZURICH OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSION AND LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **9 LIABILITY**

In no event shall ETH Zurich be liable for any damages (including, without limitation, lost profits, business interruption, or lost information) arising from the use of or inability

to use the SOFTWARE through You or the employees of the company You are legally representing. In no event will ETH Zurich be liable for loss of data or for indirect, special, incidental, consequential (including loss of profit), or other damages based in contract, tort or otherwise.

The above limitation of liability shall not be construed to amend or limit any party's statutory liability.

## 10 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- (i) ETH Zurich reserves the right to change the terms and conditions of this EULA at any point in time. In such event, ETH Zurich will notify You in due time of the changes to the terms of the EULA.
- (ii) Rights and duties derived from this EULA shall not be transferred to third parties without the written acceptance of the ETH Zurich.
- (iii) You shall not infer from this EULA any other rights, including licenses, than those that are explicitly stated herein.
- (iv) This EULA shall exclusively be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of Switzerland, without reference to its conflict of laws principles. The exclusive place of jurisdiction is Zurich (Switzerland).

## 11 ACKNOWLEDGMENT

You acknowledge that you have read this EULA, understand it, and had an opportunity to seek independent legal advice prior to agreeing to it. In consideration of ETH Zurich agreeing to provide the SOFTWARE, You agree to be bound by the terms and conditions of this EULA. You further agree that it is the complete and exclusive statement of the agreement between you and ETH Zurich, which supersedes any proposal or prior agreement, oral or written, and any other communication between you and ETH Zurich relating to the subject of this EULA.

### **Notice:**

Third party software copyright notices and third party software licenses can be found in the appendix.



**BASIC SIMULATION ENVIRONMENT  
FOR MODELLING OF ENVIRONMENTAL  
FLOWS AND NATURAL HAZARDS**

---

# **REFERENCE MANUAL BASEHPC**

**VERSION 4.1.0  
JUNE 2024**



**BASEMENT**



# Contents

|          |  |          |
|----------|--|----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Mathematical Models</b>                                   | <b>5</b> |
| 1.1      | Hydrodynamics  | 5        |
| 1.1.1    | Introduction   | 5        |
| 1.1.2    | Governing Equations  | 6        |
| 1.1.3    | Closure Relations  | 6        |
| 1.1.3.1  | Friction Terms   | 6        |
| 1.1.3.2  | Turbulent Terms  | 7        |
| 1.1.3.3  | Lateral Inflow/Outflow                                       | 9        |
| 1.1.4    | Boundary Conditions  | 9        |
| 1.1.4.1  | Standard Boundary Conditions                                 | 10       |
| 1.1.4.2  | Linked Boundary Conditions                                   | 12       |
| 1.1.4.3  | Internal Boundary Conditions                                 | 13       |
| 1.1.5    | Flood Tracking   | 14       |
| 1.2      | Morphodynamics   | 14       |
| 1.2.1    | Introduction   | 14       |
| 1.2.2    | Bedload Sediment Transport                                   | 14       |
| 1.2.2.1  | Governing Equations for Uniform Sediment Transport           | 14       |
| 1.2.2.2  | Governing Equations for Mixed-Size Sediment Transport        | 15       |
| 1.2.2.3  | Threshold Conditions for Sediment Movement                   | 17       |
| 1.2.2.4  | Closure Relations for Bedload Transport                      | 19       |
| 1.2.2.5  | Wilcock and Crowe (2003)                                     | 22       |
| 1.2.2.6  | Correction of Bedload Direction                              | 24       |
| 1.2.2.7  | Bed Material and Fixed Bed Concept                           | 25       |
| 1.2.2.8  | Gravitational Transport                                      | 28       |
| 1.2.2.9  | External Sources Terms                                       | 33       |
| 1.2.2.10 | Boundary Conditions  | 33       |
| 1.2.2.11 | Upstream Boundary Condition                                  | 33       |
| 1.2.2.12 | Downstream Boundary Condition                                | 34       |
| 1.2.2.13 | Linked Boundary Condition                                    | 35       |
| 1.3      | Suspended Sediment Transport                                 | 35       |
| 1.3.1    | Governing Equations for Uniform Suspended Sediment Transport | 35       |
| 1.3.2    | Closures for Suspended Transport                             | 35       |
| 1.3.2.1  | Deposition rate  | 35       |
| 1.3.2.2  | Erosion rate   | 36       |
| 1.3.2.3  | Settling Velocities of Particles                             | 36       |
| 1.3.3    | External Source Terms  | 37       |
| 1.3.4    | Boundary Conditions  | 38       |
| 1.3.4.1  | Upstream Boundary Condition                                  | 38       |
| 1.3.4.2  | Downstream Boundary Condition                                | 38       |

|          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 1.4      | Passive tracers . . . . .                                      | 38        |
| 1.4.1    | Introduction . . . . .   | 38        |
| 1.4.2    | Transport of passive species . . . . .                         | 39        |
| 1.4.2.1  | Governing Equations for passive specie transport . . . . .     | 39        |
| 1.4.2.2  | External Sources Terms . . . . .                               | 39        |
| 1.4.2.3  | Boundary Conditions . . . . .                                  | 40        |
| 1.4.2.4  | Upstream Boundary Condition . . . . .                          | 40        |
| 1.4.2.5  | Downstream Boundary Condition . . . . .                        | 40        |
| 1.5      | Riparian vegetation . . . . .                                  | 41        |
| 1.5.1    | Introduction . . . . .   | 41        |
| 1.5.2    | Description of Vegetation . . . . .                            | 41        |
| 1.5.3    | Effect of Vegetation on Water Flow . . . . .                   | 41        |
| 1.5.4    | Effects of Vegetation on Bedload Transport . . . . .           | 42        |
| 1.5.4.1  | Bottom Shear Stress . . . . .                                  | 42        |
| 1.5.4.2  | Critical Shear Stress . . . . .                                | 42        |
| 1.5.5    | Effects of Bed Changes on Vegetation . . . . .                 | 42        |
| 1.5.5.1  | Biomass Redistribution . . . . .                               | 43        |
| 1.5.5.2  | Plant Burial . . . . .   | 43        |
| 1.5.5.3  | Plant Uprooting . . . . .                                      | 43        |
| 1.6      | Water temperature . . . . .                                    | 43        |
| 1.6.1    | Introduction . . . . .   | 43        |
| 1.6.2    | Thermodynamics: governing equations . . . . .                  | 44        |
| 1.6.3    | Temperature closure relationships . . . . .                    | 45        |
| 1.6.4    | Initial conditions . . . . .                                   | 47        |
| 1.6.5    | Boundary conditions . . . . .                                  | 47        |
| 1.6.6    | Setup parameters . . . . .                                     | 47        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Numerical Models</b>  | <b>49</b> |
| 2.1      | General View . . . . .   | 49        |
| 2.2      | Discretization . . . . .                                       | 49        |
| 2.3      | Numerical solution of Hydrodynamics . . . . .                  | 51        |
| 2.3.1    | Vectorial Form of the Governing Equations . . . . .            | 51        |
| 2.3.2    | Spatial Discretisation . . . . .                               | 51        |
| 2.3.3    | Flux Estimation . . . . .                                      | 52        |
| 2.3.3.1  | Rotational Invariance of the Shallow Water Equations . . . . . | 52        |
| 2.3.3.2  | Computation of the Flux . . . . .                              | 52        |
| 2.3.3.3  | The HLLC approximated Rieman Solver . . . . .                  | 52        |
| 2.3.4    | Numerical Stability . . . . .                                  | 53        |
| 2.3.5    | Discretisation of Source terms . . . . .                       | 54        |
| 2.3.5.1  | Bed Slope Source Term . . . . .                                | 54        |
| 2.3.5.2  | Friction Source Term . . . . .                                 | 54        |
| 2.3.5.3  | External Source Term . . . . .                                 | 55        |
| 2.3.6    | Solution Procedure . . . . .                                   | 55        |
| 2.4      | Numerical solution of Morphodynamics . . . . .                 | 55        |
| 2.4.1    | Numerical solution of the Exner equation . . . . .             | 55        |
| 2.4.1.1  | Fundamentals . . . . .   | 55        |
| 2.4.1.2  | Spatial discretization . . . . .                               | 56        |
| 2.4.1.3  | Discretization of External Source Term . . . . .               | 58        |
| 2.4.2    | Solution procedure . . . . .                                   | 58        |

|          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 2.5      | Numerical solution of Advection-Diffusion equation . . . . . | 58        |
| 2.5.1    | Numerical solution of the advective part . . . . .           | 58        |
| 2.5.2    | Numerical solution of the diffusive part . . . . .           | 59        |
| 2.5.3    | Discretization of external source terms . . . . .            | 60        |
| 2.5.4    | Solution procedure . . . . .                                 | 61        |
| 2.6      | Numerical solution of the thermodynamics equation . . . . .  | 61        |
| 2.6.1    | Discretization of external source terms . . . . .            | 62        |
| 2.6.2    | Solution procedure . . . . .                                 | 62        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>References</b>  | <b>63</b> |



---

# Mathematical Models

## 1.1 Hydrodynamics

### 1.1.1 Introduction

Mathematical models of the so-called *shallow water* type govern a wide variety of physical phenomena. Especially the one-dimensional (1D) de Saint-Venant equations (SVE) or two-dimensional (2D) shallow water equations (SWE) are of practical interest with regard to water flows with a free surface under the influence of gravity. Applications of the models include e.g.:

- River hydrodynamics
- Propagation of flood waves
- Dam break waves
- Flooding and inundation
- Ecological assessment based on flow quantities

The 2D SWE are based on the following set of hypotheses:

- the water is assumed to be incompressible; i.e. the water density  $\rho$  is constant
- the vertical acceleration of the water particles are assumed to be small compared to the longitudinal component of the acceleration. As a consequence the pressure distribution is hydrostatic;
- the bottom slope is small enough for the longitudinal coordinate to coincide with the horizontal axis;
- the flow regime is turbulent. As a consequence the head loss, mainly due to friction against the bottom, is proportional to the square of the flow velocity.

### 1.1.2 Governing Equations

The governing equations are obtained under shallow water conditions imposing mass conservation for the fluid and solid phases and the momentum principle to a flow in an open channel with a fixed bottom.

Introducing a Cartesian reference system  $(x, y, z)$  in which the  $z$  axis is vertical and the  $x - y$  plane is horizontal with respect to gravity  $g$ , the system of governing equations can be written as

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial h}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial q_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q_y}{\partial y} = S_h \\ \frac{\partial q_x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{q_x^2}{h} + \frac{1}{2}gh^2 \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{q_x q_y}{h} \right) + gh(S_{bx} + S_{fx}) + T_x = 0 \\ \frac{\partial q_y}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{q_y q_x}{h} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{q_y^2}{h} + \frac{1}{2}gh^2 \right) + gh(S_{by} + S_{fy}) + T_y = 0, \end{cases} \quad (1.1)$$

where:

|                       |           |   |
|-----------------------|-----------|---|
| $h$                   | $[m]$     | water depth                                       |
| $g$                   | $[m/s^2]$ | gravity acceleration                              |
| $u$ ( $v$ )           | $[m/s]$   | depth averaged velocity in $x$ ( $y$ ) direction  |
| $q_x$ ( $q_y$ )       | $[m^2/s]$ | discharge per unit width in $x$ ( $y$ ) direction |
| $S_h$                 | $[m/s]$   | lateral inflow/outflow discharge per unit width   |
| $S_{fx}$ ( $S_{fy}$ ) | $[-]$     | friction terms in $x$ ( $y$ ) direction           |
| $T_x$ ( $T_y$ )       | $[-]$     | turbulent terms in $x$ ( $y$ ) direction .        |

The bed slope source terms

$$S_{bx}, S_{by}$$

are evaluated as follows:

$$S_{bx} = -\frac{\partial z_B}{\partial x} \quad ; \quad S_{by} = -\frac{\partial z_B}{\partial y} \quad (1.2)$$

### 1.1.3 Closure Relations

In order to solve system (eq. 1.1) we need to specify the closure relations for the friction terms  $S_{fx}, S_{fy}$  and the value of lateral inflow/outflow discharge per unit width  $S_h$ .

#### 1.1.3.1 Friction Terms

The governing equations (eq. 1.1) have been derived under the hypothesis (H3) of turbulent flow, hence the friction term  $S_f$  can be assumed proportional to the square of the depth-averaged velocity and can be written as:

$$S_{fx} = \frac{u|\vec{u}|}{gc_f^2 h} \quad ; \quad S_{fy} = \frac{v|\vec{u}|}{gc_f^2 h} \quad (1.3)$$

where  $g$  is the gravity acceleration,  $u$  and  $v$  are the depth averaged velocities in  $x$  and  $y$  direction,  $|\vec{u}| = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2}$  is the magnitude of the velocity vector and  $c_f$  is the dimensionless friction coefficient.



Several formulae are available for the dimensionless friction coefficient  $c_f$ . Here it is quantified using both a power or a logarithmic for which are described in the next sections.

### 1.1.3.1.1 Power Law

The Manning-Strickler power law is widely used in practice and it requires that either the Strickler's  $k_{str}$  [ $m^{1/3}/s$ ] or the Manning's  $n$  coefficients ( $k_{str} = n^{-1}$ ) is specified.

In this case the dimensionless friction coefficient  $c_f$  is calculated as

$$c_f = \frac{k_{str} h^{1/6}}{\sqrt{g}} \quad (1.4)$$

### 1.1.3.1.2 Logarithmic Law

The following approaches are implemented to determine the friction coefficient  $c_f$ :

Chézy:

$$\begin{aligned} c_f &= 5.75 \log \left( 12 \frac{R}{K_s} \right) & \text{for } R > K_s \\ c_f &= 5.75 \log (12) & \text{for } R < K_s, \end{aligned} \quad (1.5)$$

where  $K_s$  [ $m$ ] is the bed roughness height which is commonly taken to be proportional to a representative sediment size  $d_x$ . For rivers,  $K_s$  can be assumed  $K_s = n_k d_{90}$  where  $n_k = 2 \div 3$ .

Bezzola:

In this closure relation, proposed by Bezzola (2002),  $c_f$  is given as a function of the roughness sublayer height  $y_R$  [ $m$ ] (usually for rivers  $y_R \approx 1.0 d_{90}$  is a good approximation). This approach is also valid for small values of the relative submergence  $h/y_r$  Bezzola (2002).

$$\begin{cases} c_f = 2.5 \sqrt{1 - \frac{y_R}{h}} \ln \left( 10.9 \frac{R}{y_R} \right), & \text{for } \frac{h}{y_R} > 2 \\ c_f = 1.25 \sqrt{\frac{h}{y_R}} \ln \left( 10.9 \frac{R}{y_R} \right), & \text{for } 0.5 \leq \frac{h}{y_R} \leq 2 \\ c_f = 1.5, & \text{for } \frac{h}{y_R} < 0.5 \end{cases} \quad (1.6)$$

### 1.1.3.2 Turbulent Terms

The turbulent and viscous stresses are considered under the eddy viscosity model, following the Boussinesq hypothesis, and can be written as

$$T_{x_i} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \left( (\nu + \nu_t) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} h u_{x_i} \right) \quad (1.7)$$

where  $x_i$  stands for the  $x$  or  $y$  direction,  $\nu$  and  $\nu_t$  are the laminar and turbulent kinematic viscosities, respectively,  $u_{x_i}$  is the flow velocity and  $T_{x_i}$  are the commonly denominated Reynolds stresses. The turbulent viscosity is the defining parameter when employing this

type of turbulence closure, with several closures being available in fluid mechanics literature. For SWE systems, the most common options for computing the eddy viscosity are the constant, mixing-length and  $\kappa$ - $\epsilon$  models.

### 1.1.3.2.1 Mixing-length model

The mixing-length model was derived by Ludwig Prandtl and is based on a characteristic length concept where a fluid retains some of its original characteristics (namely turbulence) before dispersing them into the surrounding fluid. In this model, the turbulent viscosity is locally derived by a length scale, the strain rate and the friction velocity as follows:

$$\nu_t = l_s^2 \sqrt{2S_{ij}S_{ij} + \frac{2.34\kappa}{u_f}} \quad (1.8)$$

where  $l_s$  is the characteristic length scale,  $S_{ij} = (\partial_{x_j}u_i + \partial_{x_i}u_j)/2$  is the strain rate,  $\kappa$  is the von Karman constant and  $u_f = c_f|\bar{u}|$  is the friction velocity. The length scale can be defined as a constant or by using  $l_s = 0.267\kappa h$  (ref).

### 1.1.3.2.2 $\kappa$ - $\epsilon$ model

The  $\kappa$ - $\epsilon$  model is one of the most widely adopted models in hydraulics and general fluid mechanics. The turbulent kinetic energy (TKE)  $\kappa$  is introduced by means of an additional conservation equation, given by:

$$\frac{\partial(kh)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(khu_i)}{\partial x_i} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \frac{\nu_t}{\sigma_k} \frac{\partial kh}{\partial x_j} = hP_k - h\epsilon \quad (1.9)$$

where  $P_k$  is the TKE production rate and  $\epsilon$  is its dissipation rate. The  $P_k$  term is locally defined, whereas the  $\epsilon$  term is solved through another conservation equation, as:

$$\frac{\partial(\epsilon h)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial(\epsilon hu_i)}{\partial x_i} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \frac{\nu_t}{\sigma_\epsilon} \frac{\partial \epsilon h}{\partial x_j} = hS_\epsilon \quad (1.10)$$

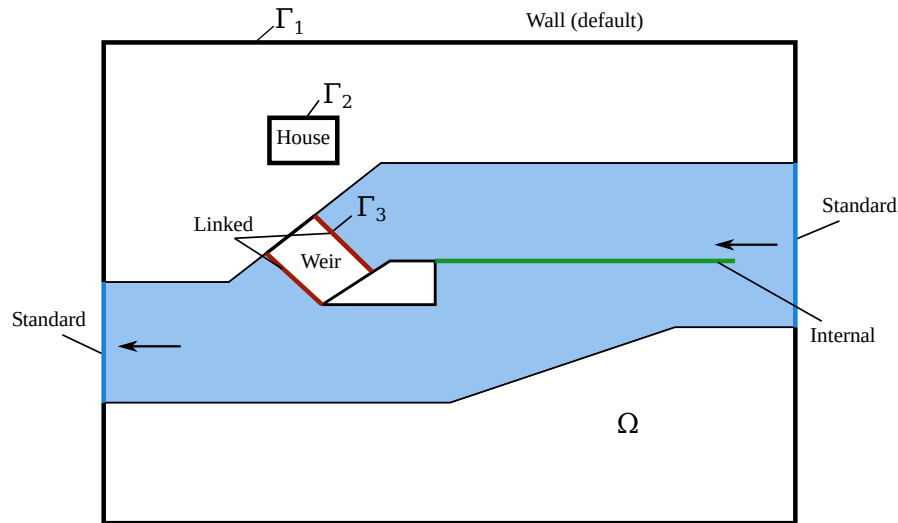
where  $S_\epsilon$  is an aggregate net source of  $\epsilon$ . In the Standard  $\kappa$ - $\epsilon$  model, the source terms for both  $\kappa$  and  $\epsilon$  are defined as:

$$P_k = 2\nu_t S_{ij} S_{ij} + \frac{u_f^3}{c_f h} \quad (1.11)$$

$$S_\epsilon = 2c_{\epsilon_1} \frac{\epsilon}{\kappa} \nu_t S_{ij} S_{ij} + 3.6 \frac{c_{\epsilon_2} \sqrt{c_\mu} u_f^4}{h^2 c_f^{3/4}} - c_{\epsilon_2} \frac{\epsilon^2}{\kappa} \quad (1.12)$$

and the constants of the standard model are  $c_\mu = 0.09$ ,  $\sigma_k = 1.00$ ,  $\sigma_\epsilon = 1.30$ ,  $c_{\epsilon_1} = 1.44$  and  $c_{\epsilon_2} = 1.92$ . The turbulent viscosity is finally obtained, locally, as

$$\nu_t = c_\mu \frac{\kappa^2}{\epsilon} \quad (1.13)$$



**Figure 1.1** Modeling domain and types of boundary conditions available. The flow is from right to left and a side weir (green line) divides the channel into a lower and an upper channel through the weir. **Standard** or **linked** boundary conditions must be provided at  $\Gamma_1$ ,  $\Gamma_2$  and  $\Gamma_3$  while **internal** boundary conditions can be specified in any place within  $\Omega$

### 1.1.3.3 Lateral Inflow/Outflow

$S_h$  is used to represent additional sources of water like rainfall and springs or water abstraction (sink) and are allocated on a set of elements defined by regions. The external source can be specified as total discharge [ $m^3/s$ ] or distributed over time [ $mm/h$ ]. Different approaches are used to manage the behaviour of the external sources:

- Exact: The specified water volume is added or extracted (non conservative)
- Available: The specified water volume to extract is limited by the available water volume in the elements (conservative)
- Infinity: All available water will be abstracted (conservative)

Addition of water always follows the “Exact” behaviour as there is no upper limit. The abstraction of water could also follow the “Exact” behaviour but the simulation might end abruptly if the available water volume is smaller than the volume prescribed. Therefore, the “Available” behaviour aims to avoid this situation. The “Infinity” behaviour abstracts all available water volume.

### 1.1.4 Boundary Conditions

After the specification of the *closure relations* there are now three equations and three unknowns, namely  $h$ ,  $q_x$  and  $q_y$ . In principle, given initial and boundary conditions, one should be able to solve system (eq. 1.1) for  $h$ ,  $q_x$  and  $q_y$  as functions of space  $x$ ,  $y$ , and time  $t$ . Given the modeling domain described in Figure 1.1, boundary conditions are required at the domain boundary  $\Gamma$  and optionally can be specified within the interior domain  $\Omega$ .

Therefore, three different types of boundary conditions can be defined:

- Standard boundary conditions: located at the domain boundary  $\Gamma_i$
- Linked boundary conditions: located at the domain boundary  $\Gamma_i$  or inside the domain  $\Omega$
- Internal boundary conditions: located inside the domain  $\Omega$

*Standard boundaries* (at  $\Gamma$ ) represent the limits of the computational domain possibly including also buildings, weirs or structures for water intake (see Figure 1.1).

#### 1.1.4.1 Standard Boundary Conditions

At the standard boundaries, two different types of boundary conditions can be specified: wall or flow boundaries. Flow boundary conditions allow the flow to enter or leave the domain while wall boundary conditions express no mass flux over the boundary. By default, the external boundaries of the domain are set as wall boundaries.

##### 1.1.4.1.1 Wall Boundaries

The *Wall* or *reflective* boundary consider the boundary at  $\Gamma_i$  and suppose it physically consists of a fixed, reflective impermeable wall. Then the physical situation is modelled imposing that:

$$\rho \vec{u} \cdot \vec{n} = 0 \quad ; \quad \frac{\partial \vec{u}}{\partial \vec{n}} = 0 \quad (1.14)$$

Where  $\vec{n}$  is the outward directed unit vector perpendicular to the wall and  $\vec{u} = (u, v)^T$  is the velocity vector. The static pressure is assumed to be zero.

##### 1.1.4.1.2 Flow Boundaries

The *Flow* boundary conditions are defined as *inflow* if they let water entering or as *outflow* if they let water leaving the domain. Flow boundaries are further distinguished into *Standard* and *Linked*. The former are applied on the boundary domain  $\Gamma$ , while the latter establish a *link* between two portions of the domain.

##### Standard

*Inflow boundaries:*

This boundary requires the specification of a value for the total volume discharge  $Q$ , [ $m^3/s$ ], which is then divided by the length of the boundary  $\Gamma$  and projected orthogonally to the boundary to obtain the values of  $q_x$  and  $q_y$ . In case of supercritical flow the following possibilities to specify the value of the water depth  $h$  are possible:

- *uniform in*:  $h$  is calculated assuming that local uniform flow conditions. The calculation proceeds as follows:

$$h = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(Q/b)^2}{gc_f^2 s}} \quad (1.15)$$

where  $c_f$  is the Chézy coefficient,  $b$  is the entire length of the boundary  $\Gamma$  and  $s$  is the value of the local bed slope that must be specified.

- *froude\_in*: In this case the flow depth  $h$  is calculated as follows:

$$h = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(Q/b)^2}{gFr^2}} \quad (1.16)$$

where  $b$  is the entire length of the boundary and  $Fr$  is the value of the local Froude number that must be specified

- *zhydrograph*: The water surface elevation (wse) at the boundary must be specified by the user. The depth is calculated as:

$$h = wse - z_B \quad (1.17)$$

where  $z_B$  is the bottom elevation at the boundary. The flow velocity at the boundary is set to zero.

#### *Outflow boundaries:*

At the outflow boundaries a value for the water depth  $h$  must be specified. These are the possible options:

- *uniform\_out*: the water depth  $h$  is calculated using equation (eq. 1.15) specifying a value for the total discharge  $Q$  and a local bed slope  $s$ . Uniform flow is calculated based on given slope and cell state at boundary (eq. 1.15).
- *weir\_out\_constant* and *weir\_out\_dynamic*: These boundary conditions establish a relation between the approaching discharge  $q$  constant and the water depth using the Poleni weir formula:

$$q = \frac{2}{3}\mu\sqrt{2g(h_{up} - w)^3} \quad (1.18)$$

where  $h_{up}$  is the water depth of the approaching flow and  $w$  is the weir elevation. The Poleni factor  $\mu$  can be either set as constant ( $\mu = 0.75$  by default) or dynamically evaluated as:

$$\mu = \frac{0.611}{a} \frac{0.75}{b} \frac{h_{up} - z_w}{w} \quad (1.19)$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  must be specified by the user in the case of *weir\_out\_dynamic* (default values are  $a = 0.611$  and  $b = 0.075$ ).

- *hqrelation\_out*: The discharge is determined as a function of the water surface elevation, thus a stage-discharge-relation has to be specified.
- *zhydrograph*: Sets a fixed water surface elevation (wse) at the boundary. The wse [m] at the boundary must be specified by the user. The depth is calculated as:

$$h = wse - z_B \quad (1.20)$$

where  $z_B$  is the bottom elevation at the boundary. The flow velocity is calculated with the Riemann solver (HLLC).

- *zero\_gradient\_out* (scientific use only): Transmissive, or transparent boundaries allow the passage of waves without any effect on them. This is mathematically obtained imposing over the entire length of the boundary that:

$$\rho \vec{u} \cdot \vec{n} = \text{const} \quad ; \quad \frac{\partial \vec{u}}{\partial \vec{n}} = 0 \quad (1.21)$$

In this case there is no need to specify further parameters.

*Note: This is boundary condition should **not** be used for practical problems and is intended for scientific use only.*

#### 1.1.4.2 Linked Boundary Conditions

This type of boundaries establish a *link* between within a certain region of the domain where equations are not solved. Once this domain portion is identified the two boundaries, between which the link is established, must be specified. Let us call them  $\Gamma_{in}$  and  $\Gamma_{out}$ . Then, one inflow boundary condition must be specified at  $\Gamma_{in}$  and one outflow boundary condition at  $\Gamma_{out}$  while in the remaining boundaries wall conditions are automatically assigned. Not necessarily,  $\Gamma_{in}$  and  $\Gamma_{out}$  must have the same number of elements.

Linked boundaries can describe a  $h - Q$  relation, a weir, or prescribed water surface elevation, i.e.:

- *weir\_linked\_constant* and *weir\_linked\_dynamic*: Similar to the standard weir boundary, the weir height  $w$  has to be specified.
- *hqrelation\_linked*: The discharge is determined as a function of the water surface elevation, thus a stage-discharge-relation has to be specified.
- *2way\_hqrelation\_linked*: The internal boundary works as dynamic wall that is controlled by water surface elevation thresholds. If the upper water surface elevation threshold is reached, the internal boundary is removed until the water level reaches the lower water surface elevation, where the wall is re-established.
- *hydrograph\_linked*: Sets a prescribed water surface elevation (WSE) at the upstream boundary. The flux over the upstream boundary is calculated with the Riemann solver and used as inflow in the downstream boundary.

The inflow conditions at the downstream boundary can be controlled via the tag *type\_downstream*. Four options are available as downstream inflow condition. For all options, the mass inflow flux is calculated based on outflow at upstream boundary. The difference between the options lies in the calculation of the momentum flux over the boundary:

- *no\_momentum*: No momentum flux over the boundary.
- *froude\_downstream*: Momentum flux calculated based on Froude number in the elements of the downstream nodestring.

- *froude*: Momentum flux calculated based on the Froude number specified via the parameter *froude\_number*.
- *uniform*: Momentum flux calculated based on uniform flow conditions for the slope specified via the parameter *slope*.

In BASEMENT versions without the option *type\_downstream*, the various linked boundary conditions differ in how the momentum flux at the downstream boundary was calculated. The following combinations correspond to the implementation of the boundary conditions in previous versions:

| type                    | type_downstream   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| weir_linked_constant    | froude_downstream |
| weir_linked_dynamic     | froude_downstream |
| hqrelation_linked       | no_momentum       |
| 2way_hqrelation_linked  | no_momentum       |
| zhydrograph_linked      | no_momentum       |
| zhydrograph_linked_kinE | froude_downstream |

#### 1.1.4.3 Internal Boundary Conditions

The internal boundary condition allows a direct cell-cell relation due to the exact same number of elements on the left and on right side of the boundary. Internal boundary conditions can be used to specify internal walls, dynamic walls or an h-Q relation.

- *wall\_internal*: The wall conditions (eq. 1.14) are applied on both sides of the internal boundary.
- *dynamic\_wall\_internal*: The wall conditions are applied on the internal boundary until reaching a threshold value (time or water depth) after which the wall is removed.
- *hqrelation\_internal*: A stage-discharge relation is applied on one side of the internal boundary, while on the other side, wall conditions apply (unidirectional flow).

For the *hqrelation\_internal* boundary condition, the inflow conditions at the downstream boundary can be controlled via the tag *type\_downstream*. Four options are available as downstream inflow condition. For all options, the mass inflow flux is calculated based on outflow at upstream boundary. The difference between the options lies in the calculation of the momentum flux over the boundary:

- *no\_momentum*: No momentum flux over the boundary.
- *froude\_downstream*: Momentum flux calculated based on Froude number in the elements of the downstream nodestring.
- *froude*: Momentum flux calculated based on the Froude number specified via the parameter *froude\_number*.
- *uniform*: Momentum flux calculated based on uniform flow conditions for the slope specified via the parameter *slope*.

In BASEMENT versions without the option *type\_downstream*, the various linked boundary conditions differ in how the momentum flux at the downstream boundary was calculated. The following combinations correspond to the implementation of the boundary conditions in previous versions:

| type                | type_downstream |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| hqrelation_internal | no_momentum     |

### 1.1.5 Flood Tracking

The flood tracking aims at extracting the flood arrival time, the maximum water depth, flow velocity, specific discharge and bed shear stress along the numerical simulation and over a selected domain area. The flood tracking provides outputs within a tracking time step defined by the user.

## 1.2 Morphodynamics

### 1.2.1 Introduction

Morphodynamic models provide scientific frameworks for advancing our understanding of river systems. The research on involved topics is an important and socially relevant undertaking regarding our environment. Nowadays numerical models are used for different purposes, from answering questions about basic morphodynamic research to managing complex river engineering problems. Due to increasing computer power and the development of advanced numerical techniques, morphodynamic models are now more and more used to predict the bed patterns evolution to a broad spectrum of spatial and temporal scales. The development and the success of application of such models are based upon a wide range of disciplines from applied mathematics for the numerical solution of the equations to geomorphology for the physical interpretation of the results.

Applications of morphodynamic models include:

- Damming of river basins
- Morphological changes due to width changes (e.g. River widenings)
- Effects of sediment mining
- River straightening

### 1.2.2 Bedload Sediment Transport

#### 1.2.2.1 Governing Equations for Uniform Sediment Transport

The governing equations are obtained under shallow water conditions imposing mass conservation for the fluid and solid phases and the momentum principle to a flow in an open channel with a cohesionless bottom.



Introducing a Cartesian reference system  $(x; y; z)$  in which the  $z$  axis is vertical and the  $x - y$  plane is horizontal, the system of governing equations is described by the system of equations (eq. 1.1) for hydrodynamics coupled with one equation for the conservation of the total sediment mass. The conservation of sediment mass is ensured by the Exner equation (eq. 1.22), named after the Austrian sedimentologist Felix M. Exner (Exner, 1925). The Exner equation allows to describe the bed evolution due to erosion or deposition, which results in the elevation change of the actual bed level  $z_B$ :

$$(1 - p) \frac{\partial z_B}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial q_{B_x}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q_{B_y}}{\partial y} - Sl_b = S_s \quad (1.22)$$

where  $p$  is the porosity,  $Sl_b$  is the source term per unit width specifying local input or output of sediment material (e.g. slope collapse or excavation), and  $\vec{q}_B = \begin{pmatrix} q_{B_x} \\ q_{B_y} \end{pmatrix}$  is the specific bedload flux. The term  $S_s$  describes the exchange per unit width between the sediment and the suspended material (see Section 1.3). The Exner equation describes the bed evolution due to erosion or deposition processes, which results in changes of the bed level  $z_B$ .

The Exner equation is solved in a decoupled way, meaning that the shallow water equations and the Exner equation are solved in sequence. This approach makes the assumption that the bedload flux is much slower than the water flow velocity (Soares-Frazão and Zech, 2011).

### 1.2.2.2 Governing Equations for Mixed-Size Sediment Transport

#### 1.2.2.2.1 Hirano-Exner Model

The mixed-size sediment transport is based on the Hirano-Exner model Hirano (1971), which extends the Exner equation to sediment mixtures consisting of  $N$  discrete grain size classes with grain size diameters  $d_g$ . The subscript  $g$  denotes the grain size class. The model is based on the assumption, that the river bed can be distinguished into different vertical layers. Only the sediment in the uppermost layer, also called active layer, is in directly exposed to the forces of the flow and therefore, only sediment from this layer is available for bedload transport. The active layer is the control volume for the mass conservation equation of each grain size class (Eq. eq. 1.23) and has a finite thickness  $L_a$  (see Fig. Figure 1.2). The sediment mixture in the active layer is determined by the active layer fractions  $F_g$  of each grain class  $g$ . The substrate below the active layer may be further distinguished into  $j$  sublayers with sublayer fractions  $f_{j,g}$ . The conservation of mass for each grain size class  $g$  in the active layer is then given as

$$(1 - p) \frac{\partial (F_g \cdot L_a)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial q_{B,g_x}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q_{B,g_y}}{\partial y} + S_{s,g} - Sl_{b,g} - S f_g = 0 \quad \text{for } g = 1, \dots, N, \quad (1.23)$$

where  $p$  is the porosity,  $S_{s,g}$  is the source term for the exchange of sediment with the water column (suspended sediment transport),  $Sl_{b,g}$  is the source term per unit area specifying local input or output of sediment material (e.g. sediment replenishment or excavation), and  $\vec{q}_{B,g} = (q_{B,g_x}, q_{B,g_y})$  is the specific bedload flux of grain fraction  $g$ . The source term

$Sf_g$  for the flux between the active layer and the uppermost sublayer due to changes in the bed level  $z_B$  or in the active layer thickness  $L_a$  is given as

$$Sf_g = -(1-p)f_{I,g} \frac{\partial(z_B - L_a)}{\partial t}, \quad (1.24)$$

where the fraction  $f_{I,g}$  depends on whether the lower edge of the active layer defined at  $z = z_B - L_a$  moves up- or downwards as:

$$f_{I,g} = \begin{cases} f_{1,g} & \text{if } \frac{\partial(z_B - L_a)}{\partial t} < 0, \\ F_g & \text{if } \frac{\partial(z_B - L_a)}{\partial t} > 0. \end{cases} \quad (1.25)$$

Here,  $f_{1,g}$  denotes the fraction of grain class  $g$  of the uppermost sublayer (index 1).

The conservation of the sediment fractions in the active layer for each sublayer  $j$  are given as:

$$\sum_{g=1}^N F_g = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{g=1}^N f_{j,g} = 1 \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots$$

The global conservation of sediment mass is defined by the extension of the Exner equation:

$$(1-p) \frac{\partial z_B}{\partial t} + \sum_{g=1}^N \left( \frac{\partial q_{B,gx}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial q_{B,gy}}{\partial y} + S_{s,g} - Sl_{b,g} \right) = 0 \quad \text{for } g = 1, \dots, N. \quad (1.26)$$

Finally, we require closure relations for the sediment transport rate  $\vec{q}_{B,g}$ , which are obtained from a sediment transport formula (see Section Section 1.2.2.4).

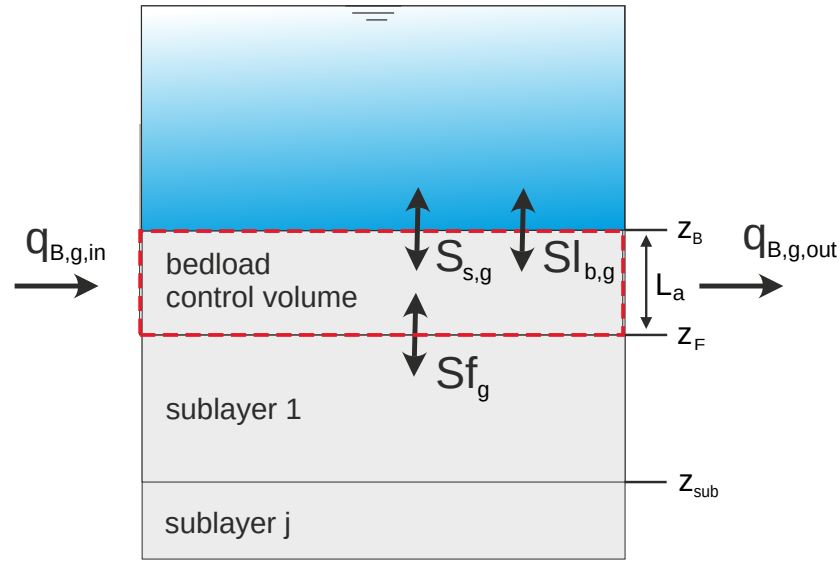
#### 1.2.2.2.2 Active layer thickness

The thickness of the active layer (bed load control volume)  $L_a$  is an important calibration parameter. This parameter influences significantly the grain sorting process. The active layer thickness can be specified in the ACTIVE\_LAYER block within the PARAMETER block. The *active\_layer\_type* can either be set to:

- constant: The active layer thickness is constant and defined via the parameter *active\_layer\_thickness*
- d90: The active layer thickness is calculated at each time step as  $L_a = kd_{90}$ , where  $k$  is the user specified *active\_layer\_factor* and  $d_{90}$  is the characteristic grain diameter for which 90% of the sediment in the active layer is smaller than  $d_{90}$ .

#### 1.2.2.2.3 Limitations

For computational performance reasons, the maximum available grain classes is limited to 10. Similarly, the number of sublayers available is limited to 2. Coupling of bedload and suspended load transport is not yet implemented ( $S_{s,g}$  for  $g > 1$ ), i.e. suspended load transport only works for uniform sediment transport models.



**Figure 1.2** Definition sketch of overall control volume (red) of bed material sorting equation

### 1.2.2.3 Threshold Conditions for Sediment Movement

The key dimensionless parameter quantifying sediment mobility is the Shields parameter defined as:

$$\theta = \frac{|\vec{\tau}_b|}{(\rho_s - \rho)gd} \quad (1.27)$$

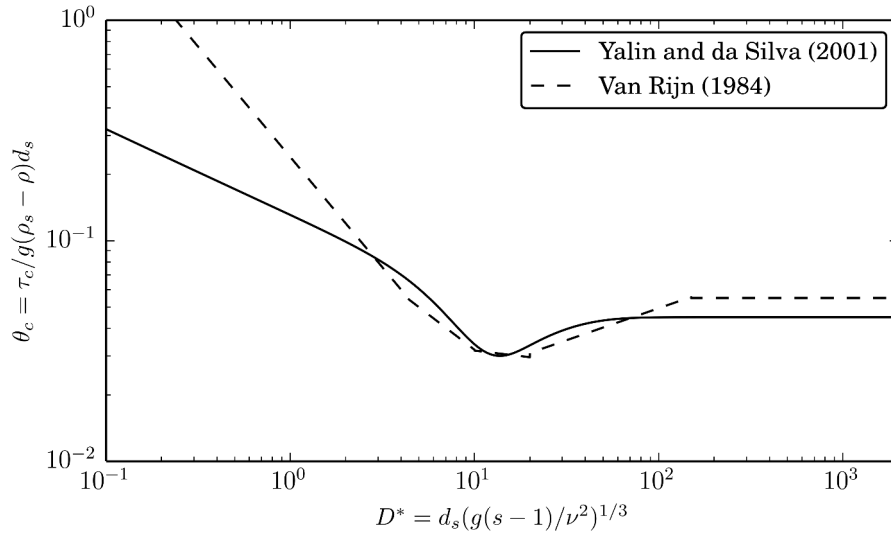
where  $vec\tau_b$  is the bed shear stress (drag force acting on the particle),  $d$  is the sediment diameter,  $\rho$  and  $\rho_s$  are the water and sediment density, respectively. The Shields parameter can be interpreted as the ratio scaling the impelling force of flow drag acting on a particle to the Coulomb force resisting motion acting on the same particle.

The bed shear stress  $\vec{\tau}_b = \begin{pmatrix} \tau_{bx} \\ \tau_{by} \end{pmatrix}$  is usually estimated by a closure condition using an empirical or semi-empirical formula. Here we use the quadratic friction law which relates the depth-averaged velocities to the bed shear stress as follows:

$$\tau_{bx} = \rho \frac{|\vec{u}|u}{c_f^2} \quad ; \quad \tau_{by} = \rho \frac{|\vec{u}|v}{c_f^2} \quad (1.28)$$

where  $\vec{u} = \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}$  is the flow velocity vector,  $\rho$  is the density of water and  $c_f$  is the dimensionless Chézy friction coefficient as defined in Section 1.1.3.1.

When a granular bed is subjected to a turbulent flow, it is found that virtually no motion of the grains is observed below a critical value ( $\theta_{cr}$ ) of the Shields parameter. According to the Shields' theory Shields (1936),  $\theta_{cr}$  can be expressed as a function of the Reynolds number  $Re^* = \frac{du_*}{\nu}$ . Alternatively, the diagram of incipient motion (see Figure 1.3) can be



**Figure 1.3** Modified Shields diagram for initiation of sediment motion

plotted as a function of the dimensionless grain diameter  $D^*$  ( $\theta_{cr} = f(D^*)$ ), where

$$D^* = d \left[ \frac{g(s-1)}{\nu^2} \right]^{1/3}$$

The curve representing the particle incipient motion ( $\theta = \theta_{cr}$ ) can be divided into three parts in the log-log graph:

- for  $D^* \leq 3$ , can be approximated by a linear segment;
- for  $3 \leq D^* \leq 100$  this is represented by a curve with a relative minimum;
- for  $D^* > 100$  by a constant trend. “

An explicit formulation of the Shields curve was proposed by Yalin and Silva (2001). It reads

$$\theta_{cr} = 0.13D^{*-0.392} \exp(-0.015D^*) + 0.045 (1 - \exp(-0.068D^*)) \quad (1.29)$$

Two approaches for determining the dimensionless critical Shields parameter are available (`theta_critical_approach`):

- *constant*: The default dimensionless critical Shields parameter is constant and equal to the user-specified value `theta_critical` (default)
- *yalin*: The critical Shields parameter is determined with the approach of Yalin and Silva (2001) (Eq. eq. 1.29).  $D^*$  is calculated based on the arithmetic mean grain diameter of the active layer.

### 1.2.2.3.1 Influence of Local Slope on Incipient Motion

The threshold condition for incipient motion of grains developed by Shields is valid for almost horizontal bed. In case of sloped bed in flow direction or transverse to it, the stability of grains is either increased or reduced due to the gravity. The critical shear stress value can be adapted consequently to account for the influence of local slopes. One approach is to multiply the critical shear stress for almost horizontal bed  $\theta_{cr}$  with the correction factors  $k_l$  and  $k_t$  for the local bed slope in the longitudinal and transversal flow direction. In the following, the critical Shields stress corrected for arbitrary bed slope  $\delta$  is referred to as  $\theta_{c,\delta}$ , defined as:

$$\frac{\theta_{c,\delta}}{\theta_{cr}} = k_l k_t = k \quad (1.30)$$

The correction factor  $k_l$  and  $k_t$  are calculated as suggested by van Rijn (1989):

$$k_l = \cos \delta_l \left( 1 - \frac{\tan \delta_l}{\tan \gamma} \right) \quad (1.31)$$

$$k_t = \cos \delta_t \sqrt{1 - \frac{\tan^2 \delta_t}{\tan^2 \gamma}} \quad (1.32)$$

where  $\delta_l$  is the angle between the horizontal and the bed along flow direction,  $\delta_t$  is the slope angle transversal to the flow direction and  $\gamma$  is the angle of repose of the sediment material.

Other formulations are also available, as for example the one proposed by Chen et al. (2010):

$$k = \frac{1}{\tan \gamma} \left( \cos^2 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - \delta_l \right) - 1 + \frac{1 + \tan^2 \gamma}{(1 + \tan^2 \delta_l + \tan^2 \delta_t)} \right)^{0.5} + \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - \delta_l \right) \quad (1.33)$$

### 1.2.2.4 Closure Relations for Bedload Transport

In order to solve system (eq. 1.1) and equation (eq. 1.22) we need to specify the closure relations. For the friction terms  $S_{fx}$ ,  $S_{fy}$  and the value of lateral inflow/outflow discharge per unit width  $S_h$  we can use the relations already introduced in the Hydrodynamic part (Section 1.1.3). For the Exner equation we need relations quantifying the bedload discharge. Let us now introduce the dimensionless bedload transport rate  $\Phi$  also known as the Einstein bedload number, first introduced by Hans Albert Einstein in 1950, and given by

$$\Phi = \frac{q_B}{\sqrt{(s-1)gd^3}} \quad (1.34)$$

where  $s = \rho_s/\rho$ .

It is common practice to quantify bedload transport empirically relating  $\Phi$  with either the Shields stress  $\theta$  or the excess of the Shields stress  $\theta$  above some appropriately defined ‘‘critical’’ Shields stress ( $\theta - \theta_{cr}$ ). The critical Shields stress  $\theta_{cr}$  is defined so as to fit experimental or field data and provide a threshold for which the bedload transport rate is too low to be of interest. The Shields parameter, takes the following form

$$\theta = \frac{h\sqrt{S_{fx}^2 + S_{fy}^2}}{(s-1)d} \quad (1.35)$$

where  $h$  is the water depth,  $S_{fx}$  and  $S_{fy}$  the friction slope in x- and y-direction respectively,  $s = \rho_s/\rho_w$ , and  $d$  is the grain size diameter. Note that Eq. 1.27 and Eq. 1.35 are equivalent.

In what follows, we describe the bedload transport formulas that are implemented to calculate the transport capacity  $q_B = |\vec{q}_B|$ , where the specific bedload flux vector  $\vec{q}_B = (q_{B_x}, q_{B_y})$  generally has the same direction as the water flow.

For practical purposes, the bedload transport formula can be calibrated by an additional pre-factor (*factor*). The bedload transport capacity is obtained from the closure relation scaled by this pre-factor.

#### 1.2.2.4.1 Meyer-Peter and Müller (1948)

The bedload transport formula of Meyer-Peter and Müller (Meyer-Peter and Müller, 1948) defines the specific bedload transport rate  $q_B$  as:

$$q_B = \alpha(\theta - \theta_{cr})^m \sqrt{(s-1)gd^3} \quad (1.36)$$

Herein,  $\alpha$  denotes the bedload coefficient (originally  $\alpha = 8$ ),  $m$  the bedload exponent (originally  $m = 1.5$ ),  $\theta$  is the dimensionless bed shear stress (Shields parameter),  $\theta_{cr}$  is the critical dimensionless bed shear stress,  $d$  is the grain diameter,  $s = \rho_s/\rho$  and  $g$  stands for the gravitational acceleration. Meyer-Peter and Müller observed in their experiments that the first grains moved already for  $\theta_{cr} = 0.03$ . But as their experiments took place with steady conditions they used a value for which already 50% of the grains were moving. They proposed the value of  $\theta_{cr} = 0.047$ . The formula of Meyer-Peter and Müller is applicable in particular for coarse sand and gravel with grain diameters larger than 1 mm (Malcherek, 2001).

The bedload coefficient  $\alpha$ , the exponent  $m$  and the critical Shields parameter  $\theta_{cr}$  can be adapted by the user in the MPM-like formula.

#### 1.2.2.4.2 Meyer-Peter and Müller (1948) with hiding and exposition effects after Ashida and Michiue (1971)

This closure relation for bedload transport of sediment mixtures extends the formula of Meyer-Peter and Müller (Meyer-Peter and Müller, 1948) by consideration of hiding and exposition effects according to the approach Ashida and Michiue (Ashida and Michiue, 1971). It defines the specific bedload transport rate  $q_B$  as

$$q_{B,g} = \alpha(\theta - \theta_{cr,g})^m \sqrt{(s-1)gd_m^3}, \quad (1.37)$$

where  $d_m$  is the geometric mean diameter of the sediment mixture in the active layer, and  $\theta_{cr,g}$  is the dimensionless critical shear for grain class  $g$  calculated as:

$$\theta_{cr,g} = \theta_{cr,ref} \xi_g. \quad (1.38)$$

The reference dimensionless critical shear stress  $\theta_{cr,ref}$  is usually defined with a fixed value (e.g.  $\theta_{cr,ref} = 0.047$ ) and the hiding factor  $\xi_g$  is defined as Ashida and Michiue (1971):

$$\xi_g = \begin{cases} [\log(19)/\log(19d_g/d_m)]^2 & d_g/d_m \geq 0.4 \\ 0.843d_m/d_g & d_g/d_m < 0.4 \end{cases} \quad (1.39)$$

$d_g$  and  $d_m$  denote the grain size diameter of grain class  $g$  and the geometric mean diameter of the sediment mixture in the active layer, respectively.

The bedload coefficient  $\alpha$ , the exponent  $m$  and the critical Shields parameter  $\theta_{cr}$  can be adapted by the user in the MPM-like formula.

#### 1.2.2.4.3 Grass Formula

The Grass formula (Grass, 1981) proposes a simple bedload transport formula, where  $q_b$  is a function of the flow velocity  $u$  and a dimensional constant  $\alpha$  and does not require the evaluation of the Shields stress:

$$q_B = \alpha(u - u_c)^m \cdot \sqrt{(s-1)gd^3} \quad (1.40)$$

where  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$  is a dimensional constant that encompasses the effects of grain size and kinematic viscosity and is usually determined from experimental data,  $u_c$  is the critical velocity and the exponent  $m$  is usually set to  $m = 3$ . The threshold condition for incipient motion of grains is typically set to zero, meaning that the bedload transport and the fluid motion start simultaneously. The coefficient  $\alpha$  characterizes the interaction between the bed and the fluid. If  $\alpha = 0$ , no sediment transport occurs. If  $\alpha = 1$  the interaction between the bed and fluid is the largest.

#### 1.2.2.4.4 Engelund and Hansen (1972)

Engelund and Hansen (1972) proposed a transport formula for uniform bed material taking into account at the same time the presence of both bed- and suspended-load. This formula is commonly used as a bulk load formula and reads

$$q_B = 0.05\sqrt{(s-1)gd^3} \cdot c_f^2\theta^{2.5} \quad (1.41)$$

where  $d$  denotes the median sediment size of the bed material,  $c_f$  the dimensionless Chézy friction coefficient and  $\theta$  is the dimensionless bed shear stress (see eq. 1.35). The Engelund and Hansen formula for bedload transport does not consider the critical shear stress as threshold condition for incipient motion.

#### 1.2.2.4.5 Smart & Jäggi (1983)

Smart and Jaeggi (1983) developed a bedload transport formula for steep channels using their own experimental results and the results of Meyer-Peter and Müller (Meyer-Peter and Müller, 1948). The specific bedload transport rate  $q_B$  is defined as:

$$q_B = \frac{\alpha}{(s-1)} \left(\frac{d_{90}}{d_{30}}\right)^{0.2} J^{0.6} |\bar{q}| (J - J_{cr}) \quad (1.42)$$

where  $s$  is the sediment density coefficient ( $s = \rho_s/\rho$ ),  $|\vec{q}|$  is the magnitude of the specific discharge and  $d_{30}$  and  $d_{90}$  are the characteristic grain size diameters, i.e. 30 % resp. 90 % (by weight) of the bed material are smaller. The energy slope  $J$  and the critical slope for the initiation of the bedload transport  $J_{cr}$  calculated as

$$J = \frac{\theta(s-1)d_m}{h} \quad (1.43)$$

$$J_{cr} = \frac{\theta_{cr}(s-1)d_m}{h} \quad (1.44)$$

where  $\theta$  is the dimensionless bed shear stress (see eq. 1.35),  $\theta_{cr}$  the critical dimensionless bed shear stress,  $d_m$  the mean grain size diameter and  $h$  the water depth. Smart and Jaeggi (1983) recommend values of  $\alpha = 4$  and  $\theta_{cr} = 0.05$ . The scope of application is for bed slopes  $0.005 \leq J \leq 0.2$  (Smart and Jaeggi, 1983).

### 1.2.2.5 Wilcock and Crowe (2003)

Wilcock and Crowe developed a sediment transport model for sand/gravel mixtures (Wilcock and Crowe, 2003), similar to Parker's model (Parker, 1990), and it was developed with a large experimental results dataset. It references fractional transport rates to the size distribution of the bed surface, rather than the subsurface, making the model explicit and capable of predicting transient conditions. The hiding function incorporated in the model resolves discrepancies observed among earlier hiding functions implemented in other transport models, such as the Oak Creek and the Cambridge ones (Parker and Sutherland, 1990). The Wilcock and Crowe model (Wilcock and Crowe, 2003) uses the full grain size distribution of the bed surface, including sand, incorporating a non-linear effect of sand content on gravel transport rate. The specific bedload transport rate  $q_{B,g}$  for grain class  $g$  is defined as:

$$q_{B,g} = \frac{F_g u_*^3}{(s-1)g} W_g^*, \quad (1.45)$$

where  $F_g$  is the active layer fraction of grain size class  $g$ ,  $u_*$  is the shear velocity ( $u_* = (\tau/\rho)^{0.5}$ ,  $s$  is the sediment density coefficient ( $s = \rho_s/\rho$ ) with the sediment density  $\rho_s$  and water density  $\rho$ , and  $g$  the gravitational acceleration. The dimensionless bedload transport rate  $W_g^*$  is defined as “

$$W_g^*(\phi_g) = \begin{cases} 0.002\phi_g^{7.5} & \phi_g < 1.35 \\ 14 \left(1 - \frac{0.894}{\phi_g^{0.5}}\right)^{4.5} & \phi_g \geq 1.35 \end{cases} \quad (1.46)$$

with  $\phi_g = \tau/\tau_{r,g}$ . The reference shear stress  $\tau_{r,g}$  of grain class  $g$  (a surrogate for a critical Shields number) is defined as:

$$\tau_{r,g} = \tau_{r,g}^*(s-1)\rho g d_g \quad (1.47)$$

where  $d_g$  is the grain diameter if grain size class  $g$ , and the dimensionless reference shear stress  $\tau_{r,g}^*$  of grain class  $g$  as:



$$\tau_{r,g}^* = \tau_{r,m}^* \left( \frac{d_g}{d_m} \right)^{b-1} ; \quad \text{with } b = \frac{0.67}{1 + \exp\left(1.5 - \frac{d_g}{d_m}\right)} \quad (1.48)$$

and the dimensionless reference shear stress of the mean grain diameter if the surface (geometric)  $\tau_{r,m}^*$  is:

$$\tau_{r,m}^* = 0.021 + 0.015 \exp(-20F_s). \quad (1.49)$$

The non-linear effect of sand content  $F_s$  on gravel transport is taken into account in  $\tau_{r,m}^*$ . Wilcock and Crowe (Wilcock and Crowe, 2003) have shown that increasing sand content in the bed active layer of a gravel-bed stream increases the surface gravel mobility. This effect is captured in their relationship between  $\tau_{r,m}^*$  (a surrogate for a critical Shields number) and the fraction sand in the active layer  $F_s$ . Note that  $\tau_{r,m}^*$  decreases as  $F_s$  increases, causing an increase of  $\phi_g$  and in turn of the fraction bedload  $q_{B,g}$ .

#### 1.2.2.5.1 Hunziker and Jaeggi (2002)

Hunziker and Jaeggi (Hunziker and Jaeggi, 2002) proposed a bed load formula for fractional bed load transport of graded sediment (also in (Hunziker, 1995)):

$$q_{Bg} = 5\beta_g [\xi_g(\theta'_{dms} - \theta_{cdms})]^{3/2} \sqrt{(s-1)gd_{ms}^3} \quad (1.50)$$

where  $\theta'_{dms}$  denotes the Shields parameter of the mean grain size of the surface bed material  $d_{ms}$  according to eq. 1.51,  $\xi_g$  denotes the hiding function applied on the excess shear stress  $(\theta'_{dms} - \theta_{cdms})$ .

$$\theta'_{dms} = \frac{\tau'_b}{\rho_w (s-1) d_{ms}} \quad (1.51)$$

Note that due to the correction of the excess shear stress  $(\theta'_{dms} - \theta_{cdms})$ , the transport formula is based on the concept of “equal mobility”, i.e. all grain classes start to move at same flow condition. The critical Shields parameter  $\theta_{cdms}$  of the mean grain size diameter is determined according to

$$\theta_{cdms} = \theta_{ce} \left( \frac{d_{mo}}{d_{ms}} \right)^{0.33} \quad (1.52)$$

where  $\theta_{ce}$  denotes the critical Shields parameter for incipient motion for uniform bed material. Two sediment layers are distinguished: the upper mixing layer which is in interaction with the flow and a subsurface layer below. Here,  $d_{ms}$  denotes the mean grain size diameter of surface bed material and  $d_{mo}$  denotes the mean grain size diameter of subsurface bed material. This relation  $(d_{ms}/d_{mo})$  can be approximated as a function of the Shields parameter of the mean grain size of the surface bed material as

$$\frac{d_{ms}}{d_{mo}} = 0.0163\theta'^{-1.45}_{dms} + 0.6 \quad (1.53)$$

Finally, the hiding function is determined as

$$\xi_g = \left( \frac{d_g}{d_{ms}} \right)^{-\alpha} \quad (1.54)$$

where  $\alpha$  is an empirical parameter depending on the Shields parameter (see also Hunziker and Jaeggi (2002)) according to eq. 1.55, which is limited to a range between  $-0.4$  and  $2.0$ .

$$\alpha = 0.011\theta'_{dms}{}^{-1.5} - 0.3 \quad (1.55)$$

### 1.2.2.6 Correction of Bedload Direction

The 2D projection of the solid discharge along  $x$  and  $y$  is obtained through standard procedures, that are mostly based on empirical basis and which account for the downward effect of gravity on sediment particles due to local bed slope and the presence of spiral flow motion in curved reaches.

#### 1.2.2.6.1 Lateral Bed Slope Effect

Empirical bedload formulas were originally derived for situations where bed slope equals flow direction. However, in case of lateral bed slope with respect to flow direction, the bedload direction differs from the flow direction due to gravity acting on the bed material. Figure 1.4 illustrates the deviation of the bedload transport direction due to lateral bed slope in a Cartesian coordinate system.

The bedload direction is corrected for lateral bed slope based on the following approach (e.g. see Ikeda (1982) and Talmon et al. (1995)):

$$\tan \varphi_b = -f(\theta) \cdot \vec{s} \cdot \vec{n}_q \quad \text{for} \quad \vec{s} \cdot \vec{n}_q < 0 \quad (1.56)$$

$$f(\theta) = N_l \left( \frac{\theta_{cr}}{\theta} \right)^{M_l} \quad (1.57)$$

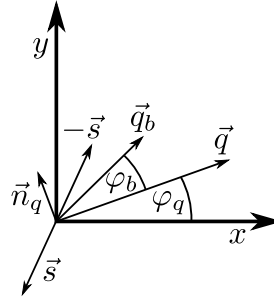
where  $\varphi_b$  = bedload direction with respect to the flow vector  $\vec{q}$ ,  $N_l$  = lateral transport factor ( $0.75 \leq N_l \leq 2.63$ ),  $M_l$  = lateral transport exponent (typically  $M_l = 0.5$ ),  $\vec{s} = \left( \frac{\partial z_B}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial z_B}{\partial y} \right)$  bed slope (positive uphill, negative downhill),  $\vec{n}_q$  = unit vector perpendicular to  $\vec{q}$  pointing in downhill direction ( $\vec{s} \cdot \vec{n}_q < 0$ ),  $\theta$  = effective dimensionless shear stress and  $\theta_{cr}$  = critical dimensionless shear stress of sediment.

The direction of the bedload transport under the influence of lateral bed slope is written as:

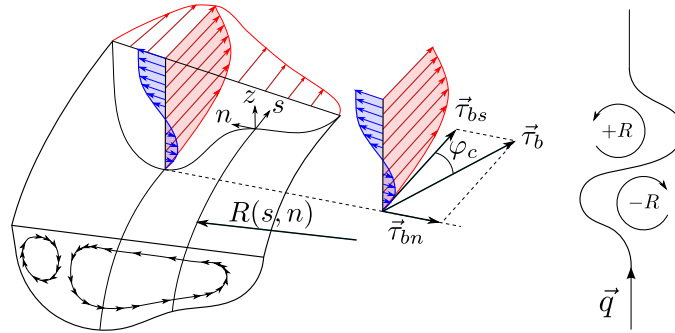
$$\frac{q_{B_y}}{q_{B_x}} = \tan(\varphi_b + \varphi_q) \quad (1.58)$$

#### 1.2.2.6.2 Curvature Effect

Curvature in rivers may cause deviation of the bedload direction from the depth averaged flow direction. Due to three dimensional spiral flow motion, the bedload direction tends to



**Figure 1.4** Bed load transport deviation angle  $\varphi_b$  from the flow direction  $\vec{q}$  due to the lateral bed slope  $\vec{s}$  (Vonwiller, 2017)



**Figure 1.5** Effect of spiral motion in river bend on bed shear stress  $\vec{\tau}_b$  with deviation angle from main flow direction  $\varphi_c$  (Vonwiller, 2017)

point towards the inner side of the curve, while the flow direction points towards the outer side (Figure 1.5). This curvature effect is taken into account according to an approach proposed by Engelund (1974), where the deviation angle  $\varphi_c$  of the bottom shear stress  $\vec{\tau}_b$  (positive counterclockwise and vice versa) from the main flow direction is determined as

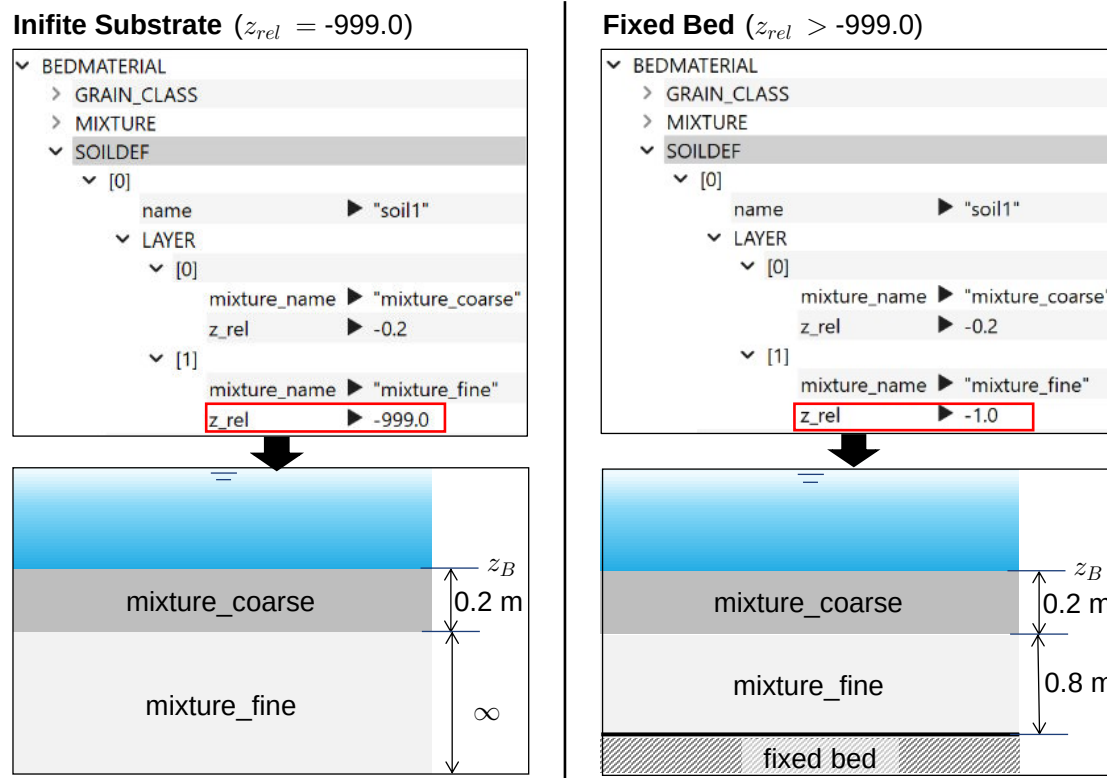
$$\tan \varphi_c = \frac{|\vec{\tau}_{bn}|}{|\vec{\tau}_{bs}|} = -N_* \frac{h}{R} \quad (1.59)$$

where  $\vec{\tau}_{bn}$  and  $\vec{\tau}_{bs}$  are the bed shear stress normal to and in the flow direction respectively,  $h$  denotes the water depth,  $N_*$  is a curvature factor, and  $R$  denotes the radius of the river bend (positive for curvature in counterclockwise direction and vice versa).

Note that the curvature factor  $N_*$  mainly depends on bed roughness. Therefore,  $N_* \approx 7$  for natural streams (Engelund, 1974), and values up  $N_* \approx 11$  for laboratory channels (Rozovskii, 1961).

### 1.2.2.7 Bed Material and Fixed Bed Concept

With the feature of the bedload transport for sediment mixtures, the concept of soil layers, as it is implemented in the BASEMD module, was adopted for BASEHPC. Soils consisting of different vertical layers can be defined via the SOILDEF block to characterize the bed substrate. Soils can subsequently be assigned to different regions of the computational



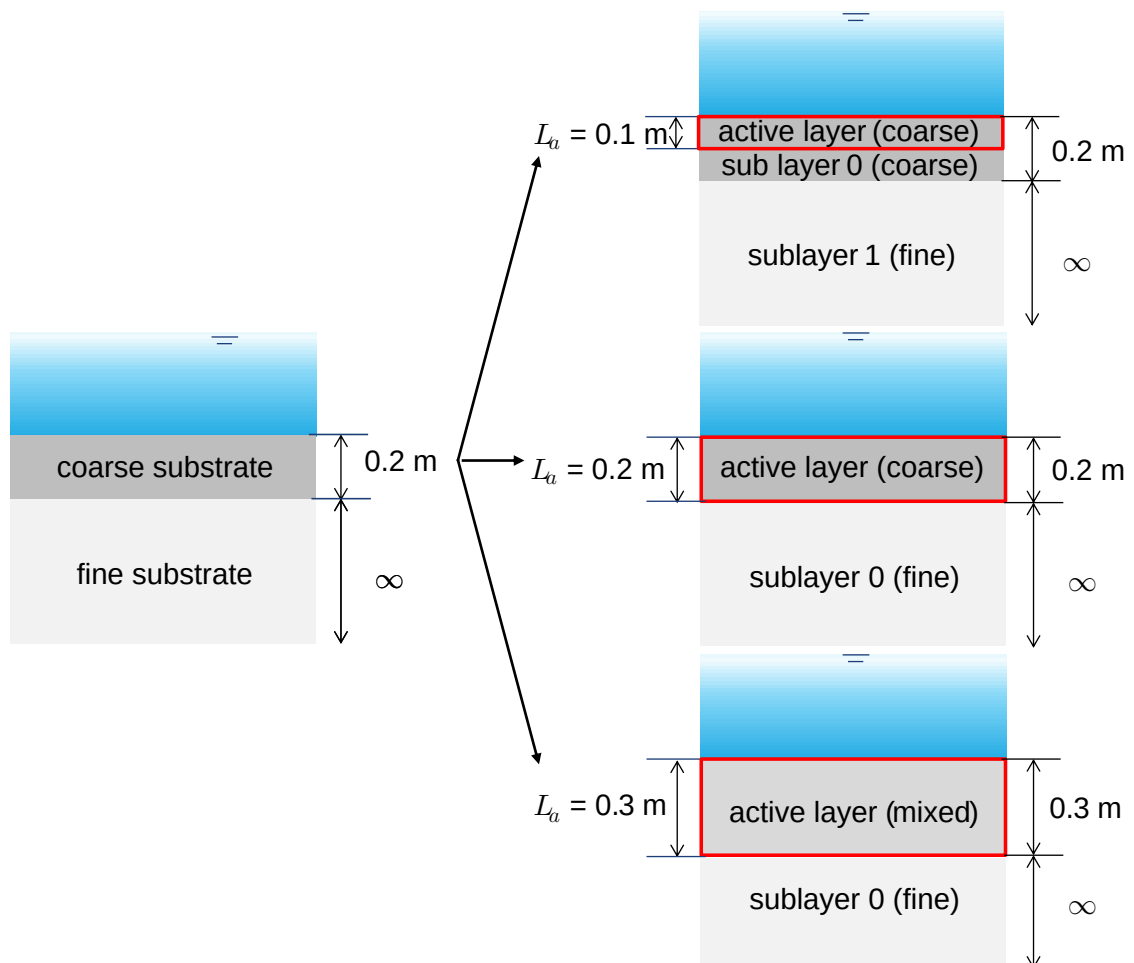
**Figure 1.6** Definition of an infinite substrate by using default value of  $z_{rel} = -999.0$  for the lowest soil layer or definition of a fixed bed by using a value  $z_{rel} > -999.0$

domain within the SOIL\_ASSIGNMENT block. Currently, the number of layers per soil is limited to 2 for reasons of computational efficiency. Each layer is defined through a sediment mixture and an elevation relative to the bed elevation ( $z_{rel} \leq 0$ ), which defines the lower edge of the layer. When a new layer is created in the graphical user interface (GUI), the default relative elevation for is -999.0 meters. Setting a  $z_{rel}$  value for the lowest layer of a soil other than the default value of -999.0, is equivalent to defining a fixed bed elevation at this relative elevation, as illustrated in Fig. Figure 1.6.

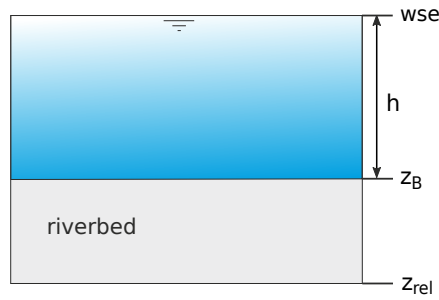
The soil definition in combination with the active layer thickness detmines the initialization of the vertical bed substrate. An example is given in Figure Figure 1.7. In the example, the soil is characterized by two layers: a upper layer with coarse sediment of 0.2 m thickness and a lower layer with finer sediment with infinite thickness. The choice of the active layer thickness  $L_a$  either smaller, equal or larger than the upper soil layer affects the number of initialized sublayers, as well as the composition of the active layer at the start of the simulation.

For restart or re-run simulations, the composition of bed material, including the active layer and sublayer composition can be provided from a result H5-file via the INITIAL block inside the BEDMATERIAL block.

Morphodynamic simulations generate deposition and erosion patterns of the riverbed. Erosion processes, if not limited, can proceed indefinitely in the vertical direction. This limit can be imposed by defining a non-erodible fixed bed elevation  $z_{rel}$ , below which the river bed is considered as *fixed*. This threshold also determines the amount of sediment available for transport (see Figure 1.8). There are three ways to define a fixed bed elevation:



**Figure 1.7** The initialization of the active layer and sublayers is determined by the soil layers and the active layer thickness



**Figure 1.8** Fixed bed concept and definition

(1) via regions in the FIXED\_BED block, or (2) via a separate .2dm mesh file in the FIXED\_BED block, or (3) via layers in the SOILDEF block, as mentioned above. If fixed bed elevations are defined both in the FIXED\_BED and SOILDEF blocks, definitions in FIXED\_BED block overwrite fixed bed information from the SOILDEF block.

When the fixed bed elevation is specified via regions or via layers, the fixed bed elevation must be provided relative to the initial bottom elevation  $z_B$  with  $z_{rel} \leq 0$ . When the fixed bed elevation is specified via a mesh, the elevation in the separate .2dm mesh file must correspond to the absolute fixed bed elevation  $z_{fix}$  [m]. Moreover, the fixed bed mesh file must have the exact same topology as the original computational mesh. In case the specified mesh only has elevation information on the nodes, the elevation is interpolated with the same method as specified in the INTERPOLATION block (default: mean). If the fixed bed elevation of the fixed bed mesh exceeds the bottom elevation of the computational mesh, the fixed bed elevation is defined at the elevation of the computational mesh.

The accuracy of the fixed bed correction is guaranteed by defining the maximal overshoot below the fix bed elevation and the maximal number of iterations required for the correction.

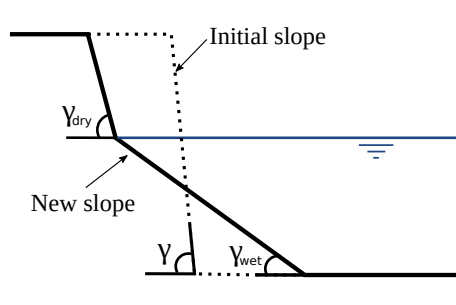
**Warning:** Defining a fixed bed elevation can slow down computations compared to simulations with a mobile bed.

### 1.2.2.8 Gravitational Transport

Gravitational induced riverbank or sidewall failures are significant aspects concerning erosion and transport modelling. Such processes may play an important role in many situations, such as meandering streams, river widenings or failures of erodible embankment structures due to overtopping waters. Such slope failure processes take place mostly discontinuous and can deliver significant contributions to the total sum of transported material. The modes of slope failures can differ largely (falls, topples, slides, etc.) and depend on the soil material, the degree of soil compaction and the pore pressures within the soil matrix. Here, a simplified, geometric approach is applied to be able to consider some aspects of this purely gravitational induced transport. The main idea of the implemented geometrical approach is to assume that a slope failure takes place if the local bed slope  $\gamma$  becomes steeper than a critical slope  $\gamma_{cr}$  (Figure 1.9).

$$q_{B,grav} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } (\gamma \leq \gamma_{cr}) \\ f(\gamma, \gamma_{cr}) & \text{if } (\gamma > \gamma_{cr}) \end{cases} \quad (1.60)$$

The sliding material is moved from the sediment element with higher elevation to the lower



**Figure 1.9** Critical failure angles for slope collapse

situated element until the stable condition:  $\gamma \leq \gamma_{cr}$  is reached. Two characteristic critical slope angles are defined in this approach to have some flexibility in modelling the complex geotechnical aspects. The critical angles can be characterized as:

- critical angle for dry or partially saturated bank material  $\gamma_{dry}$ , which may greatly exceed the material's angle of repose (up to nearly vertical walls) due to negative pore pressures,
- critical angle for fully saturated and over flown material  $\gamma_{wet}$  which is in the range of the material's angle of repose

#### 1.2.2.8.1 Calculation Procedure

The flux due to gravitational transport  $q_{B,grav}$  is calculated with the following procedure, by looping over each element of the computational grid:

1. In a first step, the local bed slope  $\gamma_i$  is calculated with respect to each neighbouring element  $i$ , where  $z$  is the bed elevation of the main element,  $z_i$  is the bed elevation of the neighbour element  $i$  and  $d_i$  is the distance between the element centers.

$$\gamma_i = \text{textarctan} \left( \frac{z - z_i}{d_i} \right) \quad (1.61)$$

2. For local bed slopes  $\gamma_i$  exceeding the critical slope  $\gamma_{cr}$ , the new bed elevations  $z_{new}$  and  $z_{i,new}$  are determined such that the stable condition  $\gamma_i = \gamma_{cr}$  is reached for all neighbouring cells  $i$ . The critical angle  $\gamma_{cr}$  is selected according to eq. 1.62, where  $h$  is the water depth in the main element and  $h_{min}$  is the user-specified minimum water depth.

$$\gamma_{cr} = \begin{cases} \gamma_{wet} & \text{if } h \geq h_{min} \\ \gamma_{dry} & \text{if } h < h_{min} \end{cases} \quad (1.62)$$

3. If the calculated bed elevation change of the main element  $\delta_z = z - z_{new}$  is smaller than the user-specified parameter  $min\_bed\_change$  (default: 0.001 m)  $\delta_{z,min}$ , no gravitational transport occurs to avoid oscillatory behaviour and to reduce the

computational effort. If the minimum bed elevation change  $\delta_{z,min}$  is exceeded, the specific gravitational flux  $q_{B,grav,i}$  [ $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ ] to each neighbour element  $i$  is calculated from the bed elevation change in element  $i$  according to eq. 1.63, where  $A_i$  is the area of element  $i$ , and  $l_i$  is the length of the edge connecting the main element to its  $i^{\text{th}}$  neighbour element. If the calculated bed elevation change of the main element  $\delta_z = z - z_{new}$  is larger than the user-defined maximum bed elevation change  $\delta_{z,max}$ , the gravitational flux is limited, such that  $\delta_z = \delta_{z,max}$ . The maximum bed elevation change  $\delta_{z,max}$  is calculated by eq. 1.64, where  $r_{b,max}$  is the user-specified parameter `max_bed_change_rate` and  $\Delta t$  is the current update time step.

$$q_{B,grav,i} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \delta_z < \delta_{z,min} \\ \frac{(z_{i,new} - z_i) \cdot A_i}{l_i} & \text{if } \delta_z \geq \delta_{z,min} \\ \frac{(z_{i,new} - z_i) \cdot A_i}{l_i} \cdot \frac{\delta_{z,max}}{\delta_z} & \text{if } \delta_z \geq \delta_{z,max} \end{cases} \quad (1.63)$$

$$\delta_{z,max} = r_{b,max} \cdot \Delta t \quad (1.64)$$

4. If a non-erodible fixed bed elevation  $z_{fix}$  is specified, the gravitational transport flux is corrected the same way as the bedload transport flux (see Section 1.2.2.7).
5. Finally, the balancing of the gravitational fluxes and the determination of the new bed elevations  $z$  is achieved by solving the Exner equation using the same numerical approaches as outlined for the bed load transport. This procedure ensures that fixed bed elevations are taken into account and the mass continuity is fulfilled.

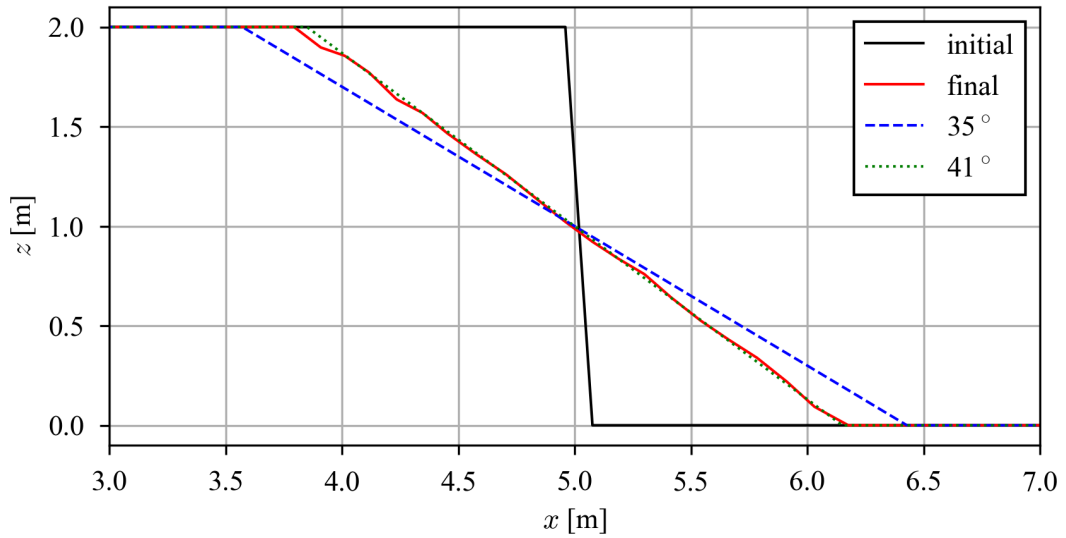
#### 1.2.2.8.2 Time Scale of the Gravitational Transport Process

Since the sediment movement due to gravitational transport during one update time step is limited to adjacent elements, it may take many update time steps to reach a stable condition on a larger scale, e.g. a bank slope spanning over multiple elements. The time scale until a globally stable condition is reached, is influenced by the update time step (`update_time`), the maximum bed change rate (`max_bed_change_rate`) and the grid resolution. The parameter `update_time` (default: 0.0 s) determines at which frequency the gravitational transport procedure (steps 1-5 above) is executed. Generally, a smaller update time step reduces the time scale until a globally stable condition is reached. The default behaviour is to set the update time step value to 0.0 seconds, which results in the gravitational transport procedure being executed at the same time step as determined from the hydraulic CFL-criterion (see Section 2.3.4).

Furthermore, the speed of the gravitational transport process can be limited with the parameter `max_bed_change_rate` (default: 1.0 m/s). This parameter represents a maximum rate at which the bed elevation of a cell can be lowered due to gravitational transport and determines the maximum bed elevation change during one update time step. Generally, a smaller value may increase the time scale until a globally stable condition is reached.

Since sediment movement due to gravitational transport is limited to adjacent elements, also the grid resolution effects the time scale until a globally stable condition is reached. A finer grid resolution (smaller elements) increases the necessary number of update cycles the reach a stable slope over a specific length. However, a finer grid resolution may also





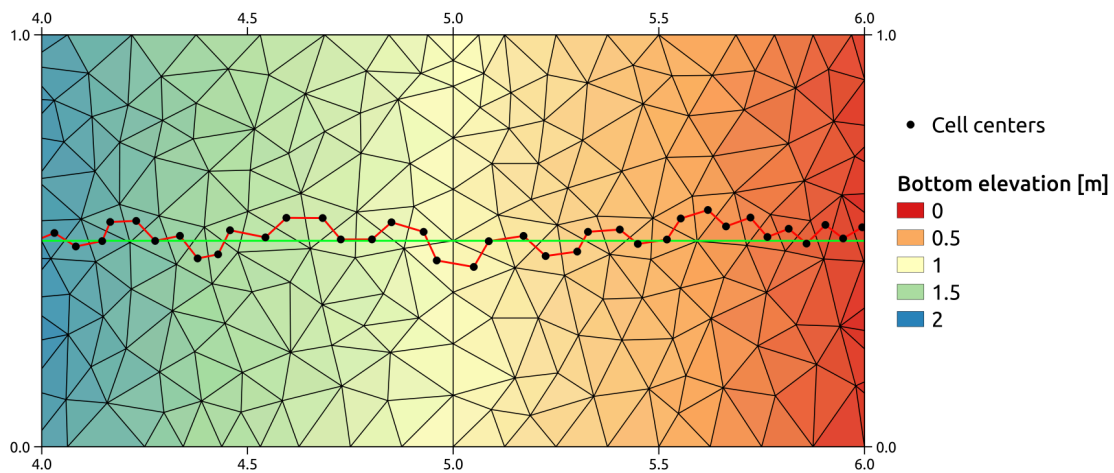
**Figure 1.10** Initial and final bed elevation profiles along the centerline are compared to profiles with angles of  $35^\circ$  and  $41^\circ$ . The slope of the bed profile at stable conditions (final) exceeds the critical angle of  $\gamma_{dry} = 35^\circ$ .

decrease the hydraulic time step and therefore may the increase frequency at which the gravitational transport procedure is executed.

### 1.2.2.8.3 Bed slope at Stable Condition

The implemented approach for modelling gravitational transport processes ensures that the local bed slope does not exceed the user-specified critical angle. Due to the spatial discretization with constant bed elevations within an element, the local bed slope is calculated between two element centers. On a larger scale (e.g. a bank slope spanning over multiple elements), the bed slope may deviate from the user-specified critical angle after reaching stable conditions. The stable bed slope over multiple elements, generally exceeds the critical bed slope.

To illustrate this effect, a simple test case was simulated. The rectangular computational domain is initially split into two parts: the left side with a bed elevation of 2 meters and the right side with a bed elevation of 0 meters. The domain is completely dry and the critical angle for dry material is set to  $\gamma_{dry} = 35^\circ$ . The simulation only considers only gravitational transport and is stopped after a stable condition is reached. The initial and final bed elevation profile along the centerline are illustrated in Figure 1.10. The initial profile exhibits the nearly vertical bed step. The final profile at stable conditions exhibits a slope of approximately  $41^\circ$ , which exceeds the critical angle of  $\gamma_{dry} = 35^\circ$ . The reason for this deviation on a larger scale is that the distance which is considered for the calculation of the slope is not a straight line, but a line connecting the element centers. This is illustrated in Figure Figure 1.11. Calculating the large scale slope considering the length of the green line results in a slope of approximately  $41^\circ$ , while considering the length of the red line results in a slope of approx.  $35^\circ$ .



**Figure 1.11** The red line connects the element centers and represents the distance, which is taken into account for the **local slope** calculation and thus for the gravitational transport. The green line represents the direct distance, which is taken into account for the **large scale slope**. The slope along the red line corresponds to  $35^\circ$ , while the slope along the green line corresponds to  $41^\circ$ .

### 1.2.2.9 External Sources Terms

The source term  $Sl_b$  represents additional sediment mass input or output (sink) that occurs locally on the computational domain on a set of elements defined by regions. The source can be specified as total volume flux including porosity [ $m^3/s$ ]. Different approaches are used to manage the behaviour of the external sources in case of a negative flux (sink):

- Exact: The specified sediment volume is added or extracted (non conservative)
- Available: The specified sediment volume to extract is limited by the defined fixed bed elevation of the elements (conservative)
- Infinity: All available sediment will be abstracted (conservative)

Addition of sediment always follows the “Exact” behaviour as there is no upper limit. The abstraction of sediment could also follow the “Exact” behaviour but the simulation might end abruptly if the available sediment volume is smaller than the volume abstracted. Therefore, the “Available” behaviour aims to avoid this situation. The “Infinity” behaviour abstracts all available sediment volume.

### 1.2.2.10 Boundary Conditions

After the specification of the *closure relations* for the sediment transport, the system of governing equations (eq. 1.1) and (eq. 1.22) can be solved within the modeling domain described in Figure 1.1, provided boundary conditions (morphologic boundary conditions) are specified at the domain boundary  $\Gamma$ . For the sediment transport only *external boundaries* that allow sediment flowing into or out of the domain can be specified. A morphologic boundary condition can be co-located with a hydraulic boundary condition. In case no hydraulic boundary condition is specified, the boundary will behave as a wall and sediment transport will not occur.

### 1.2.2.11 Upstream Boundary Condition

- *equilibrium\_in*: After erosion or deposition up to a user specified reference bed elevation (*reference\_bed\_elevation*) this upstream boundary condition grants a equilibrium condition, i.e. the same amount of sediment leaving the first computational cell in flow direction enters the cell from the upstream boundary. This leads to a constant bed elevation at the boundary condition.
- *sedimentograph*: based on a sediment hydrograph describing the bedload inflow as function of time (constant or variable). The bedload is defined as a volumetric flow rate  $Q_b = \frac{\mu_s}{\rho_s} [m^3/s]$ , where  $\mu_s$  is the sediment mass flow rate [ $kg/s$ ] and  $\rho_s$  the sediment density [ $kg/m^3$ ]. Notice that the porosity is not considered in the bedload input and is specified separately as own parameter value. The volumetric flow rate is either distributed using a geometrical weighting (*sedimentograph*), using wetted area weighting (*sedimentograph\_warea*) or using wetted conveyance weighting (*sedimentograph\_conveyance*). **Note:** When using the pre-factor (*factor*) described in Section 1.2.2.4, it is automatically applied to the volumetric flow rate at the boundary for these types of boundary conditions, i.e. the sediment hydrograph is scaled by the pre-factor.

- *transport\_capacity*: the sediment inflow is defined by calculating the equilibrium transport capacity according to the hydraulic state at the boundary. The bedload is defined as a compact volumetric flow rate (without porosity)  $Q_b$  [ $m^3/s$ ]. The volumetric flow rate is either distributed using a geometrical weighting (*transport\_capacity*), using wetted area weighting (*transport\_capacity\_warea*) or using wetted conveyance weighting (*transport\_capacity\_conveyance*). **Note:** When using the pre-factor (*factor*) described in Section 1.2.2.4, the pre-factor is implicitly included in the volumetric flow rate at the boundary for this type of boundary condition, i.e. the transport capacity at the boundary is scaled by the pre-factor. Additionally, an independent scaling factor can be specified (*boundary\_factor*), only applying to these types of the boundaries.

For the sediment discharge and transport capacity boundary condition types, the specific sediment discharge  $q_b$  is distinguished by three weighting schemes:

1. Geometrical weighting with respect to the total nodestring length  $L_n$ .

$$q_b = \frac{Q_b}{L_n} \quad \left[ \frac{m^3}{s \cdot m} \right] \quad (1.65)$$

2. Wetted area weighting

$$q_b = \frac{Q_b}{A_{w,tot}} \cdot h \quad \left[ \frac{m^3}{s \cdot m^2} \right] \quad (1.66)$$

3. Conveyance weighting

$$q_b = \frac{Q_b}{K_{tot}} h \sqrt{c_f h} \quad \left[ \frac{m^3}{s \cdot m} \right] \quad (1.67)$$

with  $K_{tot} = A_{w,tot} \sqrt{c_f h}$  the total conveyance and  $c_f$  the friction coefficient.

### 1.2.2.12 Downstream Boundary Condition

One downstream boundary condition is available:

- *equilibrium\_out*: After erosion or deposition up to a user specified reference bed elevation (*reference\_bed\_elevation*) this downstream boundary condition grants an equilibrium condition, i.e. all sediment entering the last computational cell will leave the cell over the downstream boundary. This leads to a constant bed elevation at the boundary condition.

### 1.2.2.13 Linked Boundary Condition

One linked boundary condition is available:

- *equilibrium\_linked*: At the upstream boundary, erosion or deposition is possible up to a user specified reference bed elevation (*reference\_bed\_elevation*). After reaching the reference elevation, this boundary condition grants a equilibrium condition, i.e. all sediment leaving the computational cells on the upstream side is entering at the downstream boundary with a lag of one timestep. This leads to a constant bed elevation at the upstream boundary.

## 1.3 Suspended Sediment Transport

### 1.3.1 Governing Equations for Uniform Suspended Sediment Transport

Similarly to bedload, the governing equations are also derived under shallow water conditions ensuring mass conservation extends to the suspended sediment phase. In a Cartesian reference system  $(x; y; z)$  in which the  $z$  axis is vertical and the  $x - y$  plane is horizontal, the conservation of suspended sediment mass is ensured by an advection-diffusion equation with source terms, describing the bed interaction and elevation changes arising from resuspension and deposition.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} C_s h + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( C_s h u_i - h D_{s_{ij}} \frac{\partial C_s}{\partial x_j} \right) = S_s + S_l \quad (1.68)$$

where  $C_s$  is the concentration of suspended sediment,  $D_{s_{ij}}$  is its diffusivity (tensor),  $S_s$  are local sources and  $S_l$  aggregates the source terms that parameterize vertical exchanges with the bed.

### 1.3.2 Closures for Suspended Transport

For suspended sediment transport, the source term  $S_s$  represents the exchange with the bed and is calculated through the difference between the deposition rate  $q_d$  and the resuspension rate  $q_e$ .

$$S_s = q_e - q_d \quad (1.69)$$

#### 1.3.2.1 Deposition rate

The deposition rate is expressed as the a sink flux:

$$q_d = w_s \alpha_s C_s \quad (1.70)$$

where  $w_s$  is the settling velocity and  $\alpha_s$  is an adaptation coefficient. The adaptation coefficient can be determined through two distinct approaches, the first being provided by Lin (1984) as

$$\alpha_s = m \left( 3.25 + 0.55 \ln \left( \frac{w_s}{\kappa u_*} \right) \right) \quad (1.71)$$

where  $\kappa$  is the von Karman constant and  $m$  is a tuning parameter (default value 1.0). The second is based on the critical shear stress approach of Xu (1998)

$$\alpha_s = \begin{cases} \left( 1 - \frac{\tau}{\tau_{c,d}} \right) & \tau < \tau_{c,d} \\ 0 & \tau \geq \tau_{c,d} \end{cases} \quad (1.72)$$

with

$$\tau_{c,d} = \frac{\rho_s - \rho}{\rho_s} \frac{ghw_s}{mU} \quad (1.73)$$

and where  $m$  is a calibration parameter which has been suggested to take a value of 0.0018.

### 1.3.2.2 Erosion rate

The erosion (or resuspension) rate,  $q_e$ , is given by

$$q_e = w_s \beta_s C_r \quad (1.74)$$

where  $w_s$  is the settling velocity of particles (see Section 1.3.2.3),  $\beta_s$  is a calibration constant and  $C_r$  is a reference concentration which can be determined by multiple options available in the literature. According to van Rijn (1984), the reference concentration can be calculated as

$$C_r = a \frac{d_g T_g (\theta_c)^c}{b D^{*d}} \quad (1.75)$$

where:

$T_g$  is the dimensionless characteristic number for the bottom shear stress,  $b$  is the reference height above the mean bed bottom,  $D^*$  is the dimensionless diameter and  $a$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  are calibration constants with default values  $(a, b, c, d) = (0.015, 0.05, 1.5, 0.3)$ . Another approach is the one of Zyserman and Fredsøe (1994), calculated as

$$C_r = \frac{a(\theta_s - \theta_c)^c}{1 + b(\theta_s - \theta_c)^d} \quad (1.76)$$

where  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  are calibration constants with default values  $(a, b, c, d) = (0.331, 0.72, 1.75, 1.75)$ .

### 1.3.2.3 Settling Velocities of Particles

The settling velocity  $w_s$  of sediment particles is an important parameter when determining suspended load. Many different empirical or semi-empirical formulas have been suggested in literature, with the following being implemented:

**1.3.2.3.1 van Rijn**

The sink rate can be determined according to the grain diameter after van Rijn (1984):

$$w_s = \frac{(s-1)gd^2}{18\nu} \quad \text{for } 0.001 < d \leq 0.1\text{mm} \quad (1.77)$$

$$w_s = \frac{10\nu}{d} \left( \sqrt{1 + \frac{0.01(s-1)gd^3}{\nu^3}} - 1 \right) \quad \text{for } 0.1 < d \leq 1\text{mm}$$

$$w_s = 1.1\sqrt{(s-1)gd} \quad \text{for } d \geq 1\text{mm}$$

where  $d$  is the diameter of the grain,  $\nu$  is the kinematic viscosity and  $s = \rho_s/\rho$  is the specific density.

**1.3.2.3.2 Wu and Wang**

Another approach for the computation of the sink velocity is the one of Wu et al. (2000):

$$w = \frac{M\nu}{Nd} \left[ \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + \left( \frac{4N}{3M^2} (D^*)^3 \right)^{1/n}} - \frac{1}{2} \right]^n \quad (1.78)$$

where:

$$M = 53.5e^{-0.65S_p}$$

$$N = 5.65e^{-2.5S_p} \quad \{\#eq:30\_mm\_SuspLoad\_Wu2\}$$

$$n = 0.7 + 0.9S_p$$

$S_p$  is the Corey shape factor, with a value for natural sediments of about 0.7 (0.3 - 0.9).

**1.3.2.3.3 Zhang**

The Zhang formula (Zhang, 1961) is based on many laboratory data and was developed for naturally worn sediment particles. It can be used in a wide range of sediment sizes in the laminar as well turbulent settling regions:

$$w_s = \sqrt{\left( 13.95 \frac{\nu}{d} \right)^2 + 1.09(s-1)gd} - 13.95 \frac{\nu}{d} \quad (1.79)$$

**1.3.3 External Source Terms**

The source term  $Sl_s$  represents additional sediment mass input or output (sink) that occurs locally on the computational domain on a set of elements defined by regions. The source can be specified as total volume flux including porosity [ $m^3/s$ ] or by an imposed concentration [-]. Different approaches are used to manage the behaviour of the external sources in case of a negative flux (sink):

- Exact: The specified sediment volume is added or extracted (non conservative)

- Available: The specified sediment volume to extract is limited by the defined fixed bed elevation of the elements (conservative)
- Infinity: All available sediment will be abstracted (conservative)
- Concentration: This sink type allows to impose a specified concentration.

Addition of sediment follows the “Exact” behaviour as there is no upper limit. The abstraction of sediment could also follow the “Exact” behaviour but the simulation might end abruptly if the available sediment volume is smaller than the volume abstracted. Therefore, the “Available” behaviour aims to avoid this situation. The “Infinity” behaviour abstracts all available sediment volume.

### 1.3.4 Boundary Conditions

For the suspended sediment transport only external boundaries that allow sediment flowing into or out of the domain can be specified. Boundary conditions of suspended transport type can be co-located with hydraulic or bedload boundary conditions.

#### 1.3.4.1 Upstream Boundary Condition

Two upstream boundary conditions are available:

- *discharge\_in* and *discharge\_in\_warea*: based on a suspended sediment discharge inflow, either as a constant or a function of time, the prescribed volumetric flow rate [ $m^3/s$ ] is imposed at the boundary. The volumetric flow rate is either distributed using a geometrical weighting or a wet-area weighting.
- *concentration\_in*: the suspended sediment inflow is defined by forcing a target concentration. The suspended sediment input rate is thus given by the target concentration paired with the total hydrodynamic mass flux.

#### 1.3.4.2 Downstream Boundary Condition

- *zero\_gradient\_out*: this downstream boundary allows the free outflow of any tracer quantities in the flow. **Note:** If this condition is not prescribed, a wall condition is assumed and the tracer quantities will be retained (no outflow).

## 1.4 Passive tracers

### 1.4.1 Introduction

A multitude of dissolved species are present in environmental flows. In the context of hydraulic and environmental engineering, numerical modelling of scalar transport becomes a relevant tool mostly because of its versatility. In terms of advective phenomena, the most common applications include



- Pollutant fate and transport
- Accumulation or depletion of nutrients
- Calculation of water residence times
- Flow visualization

## 1.4.2 Transport of passive species

### 1.4.2.1 Governing Equations for passive specie transport

The governing equations are obtained under the shallow water framework and impose mass conservation for both fluid and dissolved phases.

In a Cartesian frame of reference  $(x; y; z)$  in which the  $z$  axis is vertical and the horizontal lies in the  $x - y$  plane, the system of governing equations is formed by (eq. 1.1) for hydrodynamics and is coupled with multiple equations for the conservation of the total tracer masses. The conservation of each tracer mass is ensured by the scalar continuity equation (eq. 1.80), which is tightly coupled to the shallow water equations. This equation allows to describe the evolution of the specie concentration as:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} C_k h + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( C_k h u_i - h D_{kij} \frac{\partial C_k}{\partial x_j} \right) = Sl_k \quad (1.80)$$

where  $C_k$  is the concentration of specie  $k$ ,  $D_{kij}$  is it's diffusion tensor and  $Sl_k$  is the local source term, specifying additional sources or sinks of the specie  $k$ .

### 1.4.2.2 External Sources Terms

The source term  $Sl_k$  conveys an input or output (sink) that occurs locally on the computational domain over elements limited by regions. It can be specified as total volumetric flux [ $m^3/s$ ] or by an imposed concentration [-]. Different approaches define the behaviour of external sources if it imposes negative fluxes (sink):

- Exact: The specified volume is added or extracted (non conservative)
- Available: The specified volume to extract is limited by the available tracer volume (conservative)
- Infinity: All available tracer volume will be extracted (conservative)
- Concentration: This sink type allows to impose a specified tracer concentration.

Additionally, there is the option of forcing a target concentration  $C_k^f$  homogeneously across all cells defined by the region.

### 1.4.2.3 Boundary Conditions

The system of governing equations (eq. 1.1) and (eq. 1.80) can be solved within the modeling domain described in Figure 1.1, provided that boundary conditions (hydrodynamical and tracer boundary conditions) are specified at the domain boundary  $\Gamma$ . For the tracer transport only *external boundaries* that allow tracer flowing into or out of the domain can be specified. A tracer boundary condition should be co-located with a hydraulic boundary condition. Otherwise, the boundary will behave as a wall and tracer transport will not occur.

### 1.4.2.4 Upstream Boundary Condition

Two upstream boundary conditions are available:

- *discharge\_in* and *discharge\_in\_warea*: based on a tracer discharge inflow, either as a constant or a function of time, the prescribed volumetric flow rate  $Q_k$  [ $m^3/s$ ] is imposed at the boundary. The volumetric flow rate is either distributed using a geometrical weighting or a wet-area weighting, and the specific tracer discharge  $q_k$  is thus given by:

1. Geometrical weighting with respect to the total nodestring length  $L_n$ .

$$q_k = \frac{Q_k}{L_n} \quad \left[ \frac{m^3}{s \cdot m} \right]$$

2. Wetted-area weighting

$$q_k = \frac{Q_k}{A_{w,tot}} \cdot h \quad \left[ \frac{m^3}{s \cdot m} \right]$$

- *concentration\_in*: the tracer inflow is defined by forcing a target tracer concentration  $C_k^f$ . The volumetric flow rate is thus given by the target concentration paired with the total hydrodynamic mass flux  $q$  through that boundary as  $q_k = q\phi_k^f$ .

**Note:** If the hydrodynamical mass flow at the boundary is not inward directed then no tracer flux is imposed.

### 1.4.2.5 Downstream Boundary Condition

One downstream boundary condition is available:

- *zero\_gradient\_out*: this downstream boundary allows the free outflow of any tracer quantities in the flow. **Note:** If this condition is not prescribed, a wall condition is assumed and the tracer quantities will be retained (no outflow).

## 1.5 Riparian vegetation

### 1.5.1 Introduction

Riparian vegetation is known to play an important role in mediating river morphodynamic processes at various spatial and temporal scales. Predicting river morphology has to account for the feedbacks between plants, flow, and sediment transport. On one hand, vegetation can modify the flow resistance and the shear stresses acting on the riverbed, thus influencing the overall flow pattern and rate of sediment transport. On the other hand, erosion and deposition processes may cause plant mortality through uprooting and burial during floods. Including vegetation into river morphodynamic simulations has potential applications for

- estimating sedimentation and erosion processes
- restoration projects
- riparian forests dynamics
- flood hazard mapping

### 1.5.2 Description of Vegetation

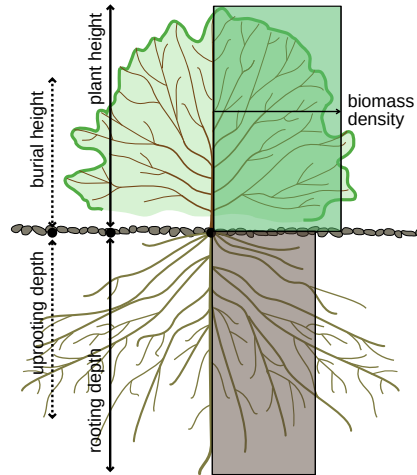
Vegetation is described by a dimensionless aboveground biomass density,  $B_c$  (subscript  $c$  stands for canopy), belowground density,  $B_r$  (subscript  $r$  stands for roots) and a rooting depth,  $D_r$  (see Figure 1.12). The sum of  $B_c$  and  $B_r$  should ideally be 1 at maximum, while there is no specific limit for the rooting depth. The model accounts also for the vegetation height,  $H$ , which is derived as  $H = aB_c^b$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are constant parameters.  $B_c$  and  $B_r$  are considered to distribute linearly along the main vertical axis of the plant. The uprooting depth,  $D_{upr}$ , namely the depth at which uprooting occurs, is defined as  $\beta_{upr}D_r$ , with  $\beta_{upr}$  a constant input parameter that decreases the maximum erosion that vegetation can withstand. The burial height,  $H_{bur}$ , represents the effective plant height when the plant is submerged (due to bending) and is defined as  $H_{bur} = \beta_{bur}H$ , with  $\beta_{bur}$  a constant parameter (see Section 1.5.5).

### 1.5.3 Effect of Vegetation on Water Flow

The aboveground vegetation is assumed to change the bed roughness. This is included by modifying the Strickler's coefficient  $k_{str}$  [ $m^{1/3}/s$ ] (Bertoldi et al., 2014), such as

$$k_{str}(t) = k_{s,g} + (k_{s,v} - k_{s,g})B_c(t) \quad (1.81)$$

where  $k_{s,g}$  represents the roughness of the bare bed, which depends on the sediment grain size, while  $k_{s,v}$  ( $< k_{s,g}$ ) is the roughness of a completely vegetated bed assumed to vary with species-specific canopy characteristics. The Strickler's coefficient can change during the simulation as  $B_c$  changes (see Section 1.5.5) (Caponi et al., 2020).



**Figure 1.12** Schematic representation of vegetation in the model. The vegetation state is described by an aboveground, belowground biomass, and a rooting depth. The other variables (uprooting depth, burial height, and plant height) are derived through specific functions and input parameters. Adapted from Caponi et al. (2020)

## 1.5.4 Effects of Vegetation on Bedload Transport

### 1.5.4.1 Bottom Shear Stress

The presence of vegetation is also known to affect the shear stresses acting on the bed surface and responsible for sediment transport. The reduction of bed shear stress is included in the model by multiplying the total shear stress by a factor  $\gamma < 1$  and computing the sediment flux using a reduced dimensionless bed shear stress (Shields parameter),  $\gamma\theta$ . The parameter  $\gamma$  ranges between 0 and 1 and it is chosen according to  $\gamma = k_{str}(t)/k_{s,g}$ , with  $k_{str}$  evaluated as in eq. 1.81, (Caponi and Siviglia, 2018).

### 1.5.4.2 Critical Shear Stress

The role of root-enhanced riverbed cohesion is taken into account by increasing the critical Shields parameter (Bertoldi et al., 2014). Assuming an MPM-like formula (eq. 1.36), the critical Shields parameter  $\theta_{cr}$  is defined as

$$\theta_{cr}(t) = \theta_{cr,g} + (\theta_{cr,v} - \theta_{cr,g})B_r(t) \quad (1.82)$$

in which  $\theta_{cr,g}$  and  $\theta_{cr,v}$  ( $> \theta_{cr,g}$ ) represent the values used for bare bed and completely vegetated riverbed, respectively (Caponi and Siviglia, 2018).

## 1.5.5 Effects of Bed Changes on Vegetation

Bed level change causes three effects on vegetation in the model: uprooting, burial, and biomass redistribution.

### 1.5.5.1 Biomass Redistribution

As soon the bed level changes, the portion of vegetation above and below ground changes as well. The model assumes that the total biomass remains constant during a simulation, unless uprooting occurs. This means that in case of a positive bed level change,  $\Delta z_B > 0$  (deposition),  $B_c$  will decrease by  $\Delta z_B(B_c/H_{bur})$  and  $B_r$  will increase by the same amount, where  $H_{bur}$  is a fraction of the plant height. On the contrary, in case of bed level erosion,  $B_c$  will increase by  $\Delta z_B(B_r/D_r)$  and  $B_r$  will decrease by the same amount (Caponi et al., 2020). Changes in  $B_c$  and  $B_r$  during the simulation will change the effects on flow and sediment transport associated with these values following eq. 1.82 and eq. 1.81.

### 1.5.5.2 Plant Burial

Plant burial is the mechanism by which a plant get covered by sediments, that is, when the bed level increases in a cell until reaching the burial plant height  $H_{bur}$ . This value takes into account the bending of the plant when submerged, which reduces the effective height of the plant. In case the bed level change reaches  $H_{bur}$ ,  $B_c$  will go to zero, causing the  $k_{str}$  value to equal  $k_{s,g}$ . In case the bed level decreases again during the simulation,  $B_c$  can increase as well (Caponi et al., 2020). Plants can in fact resist well sedimentation processes, thanks to the high flexibility of the stems that prevents breakage.

### 1.5.5.3 Plant Uprooting

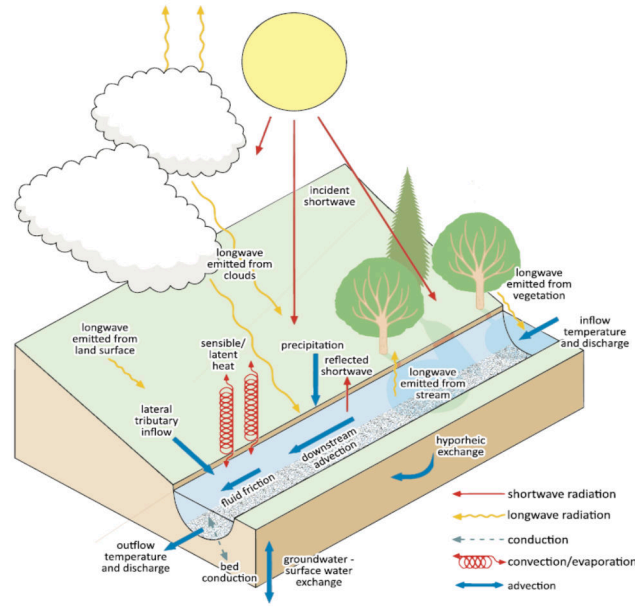
Plant uprooting occurs when the pulling forces applied on the plant by the water flow equal the resisting forces of the plant, which are given by the root system anchoring. We consider that this can occur only when part of the plant roots are already exposed to the flow, that is, when the bed level has decreased during the simulation (type II of uprooting, following the conceptual model of Edmaier et al. (2011)). Therefore, the uprooting is modelled by defining a critical depth at which the plant is removed. This depth is currently defined as a percentage of the rooting depth as  $D_{cr} = \beta_{upr}D_r$ , where  $\beta_{upr}$  is a parameter that modulates the resistance of the plant and depends on soil characteristics and plant species. When uprooting occurs,  $B_c$  and  $B_r$  are set to zero and vegetation cannot influence flow and sediment transport anymore during the simulation.

## 1.6 Water temperature

### 1.6.1 Introduction

River water temperature is a fundamental physical property of flowing water, having a key role in many ecological processes (Caissie, 2006). Its magnitude, fluctuations and seasonality have a critical impact on biota behaviour, metabolism and distribution. River temperature shows also spatial heterogeneity, i.e. thermal landscapes, resulting from complex interplay between atmospheric conditions with landscape and reach morphological characteristics.

In this context a modelling solution that account for 2D (bi-dimensional, depth averaged) hydro-thermal dynamics to quantify and simulate thermal dynamics is desirable yet challenging. It requires a good amount and quality of field data (e.g. atmospheric,



**Figure 1.13** Schematic representation of energy and hydrological exchanges determining river water temperature. From Dugdale et al. (2017)

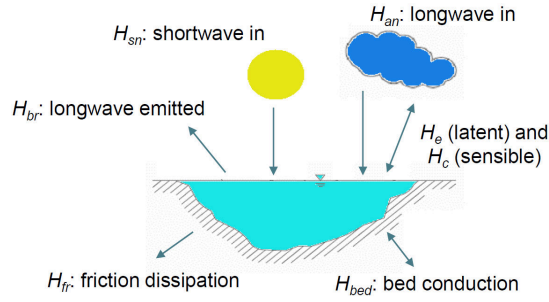
groundwater level, topography, etc.), and a solid model for hydro-thermodynamic simulation at adequate spatial and temporal scale.

### 1.6.2 Thermodynamics: governing equations

River water temperature can be modelled assuming the passive advection and diffusion of a scalar quantity, in the form of dissolved or particulated particles (Vanzo et al., 2016). The transport of the water temperature can be described by the following advection-diffusion-reaction equation:

$$\begin{aligned} & \partial_t q_T + \partial_x \left[ \frac{q_x q_T}{h} - h (K_{xx} \partial_x T + K_{xy} \partial_y T) \right] + \partial_y \left[ \frac{q_y q_T}{h} - h (K_{yx} \partial_x T + K_{yy} \partial_y T) \right] \\ & = \frac{H_{atm}}{c_w \rho_w} + \frac{H_b}{c_w \rho_w}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.83)$$

where the equation unknown is the specific thermal mass  $q_T = hT$  [ $m^\circ C$ ], with  $T$  the water temperature and  $h$  the water depth. The terms  $K_{ij}$  [ $m^2/s$ ] are the components of the 2D diffusion tensor. The right-hand side terms of eq. (eq. 1.83) are the “reaction” terms, hence represent the variation of water temperature due to external forcings, such as atmospheric ones. In particular,  $H_{atm}$  [ $W/m^2$ ] is the total net energy flux exchanged with the water column from the surface, i.e. with the atmosphere, whilst  $H_b$  collects the energy fluxes related with the river bed. Finally,  $\rho_w$  and  $c_w$  are the water density [ $Kg/m^3$ ] and specific heat ( $4186 JKg^{-1}K^{-1}$ ), respectively.



**Figure 1.14** Schematic representation of thermal fluxes that can be simulated

### 1.6.3 Temperature closure relationships

The atmospheric net heat exchange  $H_{atm}$  [ $W/m^2$ ] to or from the water column (positive for incoming fluxes) is the sum of different factors:

$$H_{atm} = H_{sn} + H_{an} + H_{br} + H_e + H_c. \quad (1.84)$$

The incoming net short-wave radiation flux  $H_{sn}$  is expressed as

$$H_{sn} = 0.97H_{si}(1.0 - SF), \quad (1.85)$$

where the user-provided total incoming radiation  $H_{si}$  [ $W/m^2$ ] is corrected with albedo (3%) and a user-provided shade factor  $SF$  [0 to 1]. Incoming long wave radiation is  $H_{an}$  and reads:

$$H_{an} = \sigma (T_a + 273.15)^4 (Ca + 0.084900481\sqrt{e_a})(1 - R_l), \quad (1.86)$$

where  $\sigma=5.67e^{-8}W.m^{-2}K^{-4}$  is the Stefan-Boltzman constant,  $T_a$  [ $degC$ ] is the air temperature,  $e_a$  [kPa] is the air vapor pressure and the two coefficients  $Ca=0.6$  (Brundt's coefficient) and  $R_l=0.03$  (reflective coefficient) are assumed constant. The air vapor pressure  $e_a$  is calculated from the user-provided relative humidity  $RH$  [%] and the saturation of vapor pressure  $e_v$  [kPa] as:

$$e_a = 0.01RH \cdot e_v. \quad (1.87)$$

The saturation of vapor pressure  $e_v$  [kPa] is evaluated via Tetens equation, as function of the air temperature:

$$e_v = \left( \frac{17.27 \cdot T_a}{0.61078 \cdot e^{T_a + 237.3}} \right). \quad (1.88)$$

The emitted long wave radiation  $H_{br}$  is a function of the river water temperature  $T$ , and is calculated as:

$$H_{br} = -\sigma\epsilon(T + 273.15)^4, \quad (1.89)$$

with same symbols as before, and emissivity  $\epsilon=0.97$ .

The evaporation (latent) heat flux  $H_e$  is evaluated as:

$$H_e = - \left( 9.2 + 0.46v_w^2 \right) \cdot (e_v - e_a), \quad (1.90)$$

where  $v_w$  [m/s] is the 2m-above-soil wind speed. Similarly, the convective (sensible) heat flux  $H_c$  reads:

$$H_c = -0.47 \left( 9.2 + 0.46v_w^2 \right) \cdot (T - T_a). \quad (1.91)$$

Detailed references for the formulation of the atmospheric heat fluxes  $H_{atm}$  are given in (Siviglia and Toro, 2009).

The heat exchanges with the river bed  $H_b$  [ $W/m^2$ ] are evaluated in the form of two contributions,

$$H_b = H_{bed} + H_{fr}. \quad (1.92)$$

The first right-hand side term  $H_{bed}$  represents the convective heat exchange with the bed and it is (at this stage) a crude simplification of the relation proposed in (Caissie and Luce, 2017) (Eq. 3):

$$H_{bed} = -k_b \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \approx -k_b \frac{T - T_b}{L_b}, \quad (1.93)$$

where  $T_b$  is the user-provided reference bed temperature at the sediment depth  $L_b$  [m]. The bed thermal conductivity  $k_b$  [ $W/m/K$ ] has default value of 1.5. The second term of the bed fluxes  $H_{fr}$  can be used to simulate the water heat dissipation by friction, and it is proposed similarly to (Beltaos, 2013):

$$H_{fr} = -f_{fr} \rho_w \frac{u^3}{c_f^2}, \quad (1.94)$$

where  $u$  is the magnitude of the flow,  $c_f$  the friction term (see (Vanzo et al., 2021)). The pre-factor  $f_{fr}$  [-] (default value 0, ranging 0 to 1) can be used to tune the contribution of such term. It is worth mentioning that the formulation was proposed in the framework of modelling ice formation in rivers and it should be carefully applied/tuned.

The terms  $K_{ij}$  of the diffusion tensor vary considerably with respect to the physical nature of the transported species. Diffusive transport is modelled in terms of both molecular diffusion  $K^m$  and turbulent dispersion  $K_{ij}^t$ , such that  $K_{ij} = K^m I_{ij} + K_{ij}^t$ , with  $I_{ij}$  the identity matrix. The molecular diffusion is assumed as an isotropic Fickian process with constant coefficient  $K^m$ . Turbulent dispersion is anisotropic ( $K_{ij}^t$ ) and scales with the friction velocity  $u_* = \|\mathbf{u}\|/c_f$  and water depth via a longitudinal  $\alpha_L$  and transversal  $\alpha_T$  non-dimensional coefficients. Suitable values for open channel flows in natural environments are  $\alpha_L=13$  and  $\alpha_T=1.2$  (Vanzo et al., 2016).



### 1.6.4 Initial conditions

The user is requested to define the initial conditions of the simulation. Different types of initial conditions are available, similarly to the other modules:

- **zero**: temperature is set to 0 in all the computational cells (default);
- **region defined**: user explicitly defines the initial values of the water temperature. Different values can be assigned to different region of the computational domain;
- **continue**: values are taken from the result file of previous simulations at the provided time  $t$ .
- **assigned from file** (experimental): water temperature initial conditions are read from a text file (single column of values) where the row numbers matches the computational cell ID from the mesh file.

### 1.6.5 Boundary conditions

In the current version of the water temperature module, only *standard* BCs are implemented for river temperature simulations, with three types: i) temperature inflow as a constant value or ii) as a time-series (`passive_in`) and (iii) Neumann BC outflow (`passive_out`). User can set a multiplication factor (default value=1) to scale the input timeseries.

### 1.6.6 Setup parameters

The parameters needed in the equations of section Section 1.6.3 are to be found in the sub-blocks PARAMETERS and DIFFUSION of the temperature module. They all have default values. A brief explanation follows.

Block PARAMETER \* “fluid\_specific\_heat”[J/Kg/K]: Water specific heat. Default value = 4186 J/Kg/K; \* “temperature\_start” [s]: possibility to delay the beginning of temperature calculation. Default value = 0s, i.e. starts from the beginning; \* “source\_update\_time” [s]: interval for updating the source terms. Default = 0s (i.e. at every computational timestep). Larger values lead to faster simulations, but convergence needs to be tested; \* “friction\_heating\_factor” [-]: to calibrate the heat dissipation by friction with the river bed. Default=0, i.e. deactivated; \* “bed\_thermal\_thickness”[m]: vertical thickness to reach constant soil temperature. Default = 1m; \* “bed\_thermal\_conductivity”[W/m/K]: it depends on soil type. Default value = 1.5 W/m/K. Hint: Set to 0.0 to exclude this contribution from the simulation.

Block DIFFUSION

- “type”:
  - none (equivalent to removing the block)
  - constant: fixed diffusion coefficients
  - dynamic: diffusion coefficients depend on flow conditions
- “molecular\_diffusion” [m<sup>2</sup>/s]: in water. Default value = 1e-9 m<sup>2</sup>/s,
- “longitudinal\_diffusion\_coeff”:

- constant value in [m<sup>2</sup>/s] if type=constant
  - non-dimensional factor (suggested 13) if type=dynamic
  - default value = 0
- “transversal\_diffusion\_coeff”:
  - constant value in [m<sup>2</sup>/s] if type=constant
  - non-dimensional factor (suggested 1.2) if type=dynamic
  - default value = 0
- “maximum\_relaxation\_parameter”[-]: related with the numerical solver (Vanzo et al., 2016). Default value = 0.1.

---

# Numerical Models

## 2.1 General View

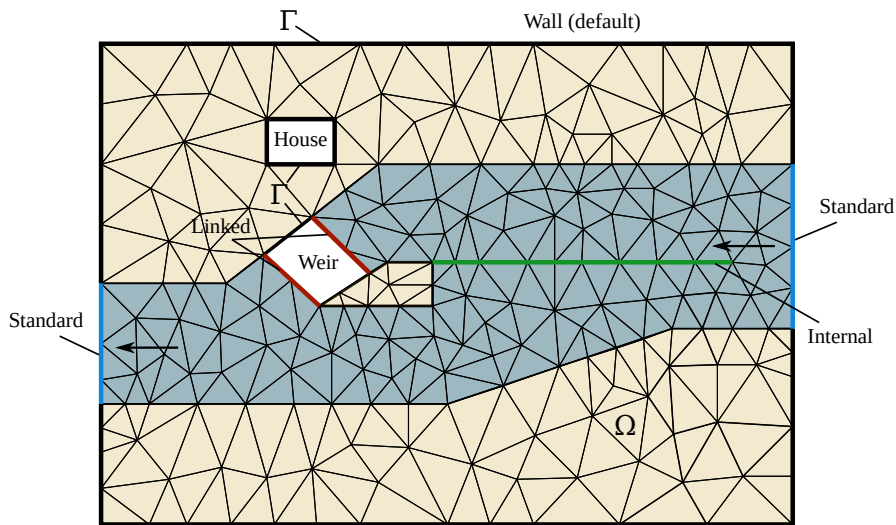
The governing equations of hydro- and morphodynamics are conservation laws expressing conservation of mass and momentum. The aim of the numerical simulation is to solve these equations over the computational domain and for a given time. The computational domain is discretized by a computational mesh consisting of elements and conservation equations are applied on each domain element. In order to numerically solve the conservation equations, the mathematical model is approximated by numerical schemes, i.e. the numerical approximation consists of the spatial and temporal discretization of the conservation equations including an algorithm that solves the discretized equations.

For BASEHPC::BASEplane, the spatial discretisation of the domain is based on an unstructured mesh made of triangular elements (Figure 2.1). For the conservation equations, the spatial discretisation follows the finite volume scheme, while for the temporal discretisation an explicit first order Euler scheme is used. The software processes the different modules (e.g. hydraulic, morphology, tracers) in a decoupled way (Figure 2.2).

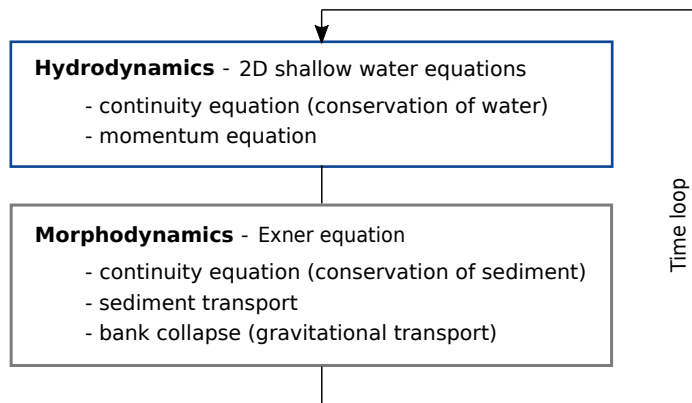
The discretization and the solution method for the hydro- and morphodynamic equations will be presented in the following sections.

## 2.2 Discretization

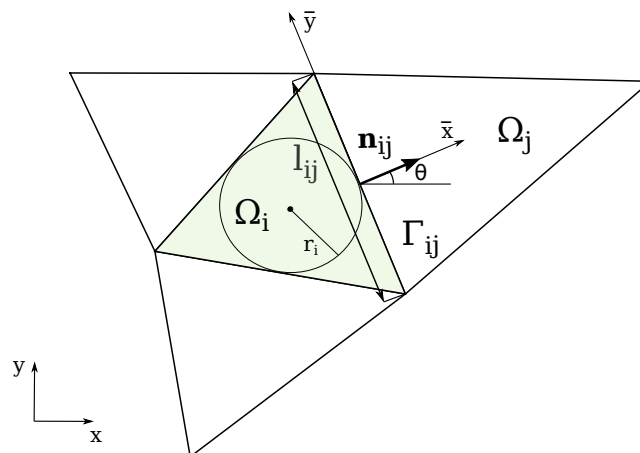
The problem is discretised adopting a finite volume approach over unstructured triangular meshes. A conforming triangulation  $T_\Omega$  of the computational domain  $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^2$  by elements  $\Omega_i$  such that  $T_\Omega = \bigcup \Omega_i$ , is assumed. Hereafter we will use the following notation: given a finite volume  $\Omega_i$ ,  $j = 1, 2, 3$  is the set of indexes such that  $\Omega_j$  is a neighbour of  $\Omega_i$ ;  $\Gamma_{ij}$  is the common edge of two neighbour cells  $\Omega_i$  and  $\Omega_j$ , and  $l_{ij}$  its length.  $\mathbf{n}_{ij} = (n_{ij,x}, n_{ij,y})$  is the unit vector which is normal to the edge  $\Gamma_{ij}$  and points toward the cell  $\Omega_j$  (see Figure 2.3). Data are represented by cell averages  $U_i^n$  and the numerical solution sought at time  $t^{n+1} = t^n + \Delta t$ , is denoted by  $U_i^{n+1}$ .



**Figure 2.1** Modeling domain, types of boundary conditions and computational mesh. The flow is from right to left and a side weir (green line) divides the channel into a lower and an upper channel through the weir. External boundary conditions must be provided at  $\Gamma_1$ ,  $\Gamma_2$  and  $\Gamma_3$  while internal boundary conditions can be specified in any place within  $\Omega$



**Figure 2.2** Overview of the numerical model



**Figure 2.3** Element (shaded triangle) of unstructured triangular mesh and used notation.

## 2.3 Numerical solution of Hydrodynamics

### 2.3.1 Vectorial Form of the Governing Equations

For numerical convenience, the system of governing equations (eq. 1.1) is rewritten in vectorial form in terms of the water surface elevation  $H = h + z_B$ . It now reads:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{F}_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{F}_y}{\partial y} = \mathbf{S} \quad (2.1)$$

where the vector of unknowns is

$$\mathbf{U} = \begin{pmatrix} H \\ q_x \\ q_y \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.2)$$

the vector fluxes are

$$\mathbf{F}_x = \begin{pmatrix} q_x \\ uq_x + \frac{1}{2}g(H^2 - 2Hz_b) \\ uq_y \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \mathbf{F}_y = \begin{pmatrix} q_y \\ vq_x \\ vq_y + \frac{1}{2}g(H^2 - 2Hz_b) \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.3)$$

and the vector of source terms is

$$\mathbf{S} = \begin{pmatrix} S_h \\ gHS_x \\ gHS_y \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.4)$$

The motivation of using  $H$  instead of  $h$  lies in the fact that it is easier to develop numerical schemes which preserve depth positivity and satisfy the well-balanced property.

### 2.3.2 Spatial Discretisation

In order to discretise the system of governing equations, the domain is meshed by a set of triangular elements. The spatial discretization of the conservation equations is carried out by the finite volume method, where the differential equations are integrated over the single elements, i.e. control volumes. The water surface elevation is defined at the element center and is equally distributed over the element.

By integrating the governing system of equations eq. 2.1 in the control volume  $V = [\Omega_i] \times [t^n, t^{n+1}]$ , we obtain

$$\mathbf{U}_i^{n+1} = \mathbf{U}_i^n - \frac{\Delta t}{|\Omega_i|} \sum_{j=1}^3 l_{ij} [\mathbf{F}_{ij}] + \Delta t \mathbf{S}_i. \quad (2.5)$$

### 2.3.3 Flux Estimation

#### 2.3.3.1 Rotational Invariance of the Shallow Water Equations

The flux  $\mathbf{F}_{ij}$  are evaluated taking advantage of the rotational invariance property of the shallow water equations. According to this property the two-dimensional homogeneous shallow water equations satisfy the following equality (Toro, 2009):

$$\mathbf{n}_{ij} \cdot [\mathbf{F}_x(\mathbf{U}), \mathbf{F}_y(\mathbf{U})] = \mathbf{T}^{-1}(\theta) \mathbf{F}_x[\mathbf{T}(\theta)\mathbf{U}] \quad (2.6)$$

where  $\theta$  is the angle between the vector  $\mathbf{n}_{ij}$  and x-axis, measured counter clockwise from the  $x$ -axis (see Figure 2.3) and

$$\mathbf{T}(\theta) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ 0 & -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.7)$$

being

$\mathbf{T}^{-1}(\theta) = \text{inverse of } \mathbf{T}(\theta)$ .

#### 2.3.3.2 Computation of the Flux

The flux  $\mathbf{F}_{ij}$  is obtained at every edge of the finite volume mesh, as the solution of the one-dimensional projected Riemann problem along the normal direction of the two conservation laws eq. 2.1. The computational steps can be summarized as follows:

- First, the vector of conserved variables  $\mathbf{U}$  is transformed into the local coordinate system  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  (see Figure 2.3) at the edge with the operation  $\mathbf{T}(\theta)\mathbf{U}$ .
- A one-dimensional, local Riemann problem is formulated and solved in the normal direction of the edge. From this calculation the new flux vector over the edge  $\mathbf{F}[\mathbf{T}(\theta)\mathbf{U}]$  is defined.
- The flux vector, formulated in the local coordinate system is transformed back to the global coordinates (Cartesian) with  $\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{F}[\mathbf{T}(\theta)\mathbf{U}]$ . The sum of the fluxes of all edges of an element gives the total fluxes in the  $x$ - and  $y$  directions.

The fluxes are calculated in the normal direction of the element edges. The normal direction of the edge is defined positive from element  $i$  (L) to element  $j$  regarding the edge direction.

#### 2.3.3.3 The HLLC approximated Riemann Solver

The HLLC approximate Riemann solver (Toro, 1994) is a modified HLL (Harten, Lax and van Leer) approximate Riemann solver that includes the shear wave.

The numerical flux at the cell interface is computed as follows:

$$\mathbf{F}_{ij}^{HLLC} = \begin{cases} \mathbf{F}_i & \text{if } 0 \leq S_i, \\ \mathbf{F}_{*i} = \mathbf{F}_i + S_i(\mathbf{U}_{*L} - \mathbf{U}_i) & \text{if } S_i \leq 0 \leq S_*, \\ \mathbf{F}_{*j} = \mathbf{F}_j + S_j(\mathbf{U}_{*R} - \mathbf{U}_j) & \text{if } S_* \leq 0 \leq S_j, \\ \mathbf{F}_j & \text{if } 0 \geq S_j. \end{cases} \quad (2.8)$$

The wave speed velocities are estimated as:

$$S_i = u_i - \sqrt{gh_i}\xi_i; \quad S_j = u_j + \sqrt{gh_j}\xi_j \quad (2.9)$$

where  $\xi_{K=(i,j)}$  is defined as:

$$\xi_K = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{(h_* + h_K)h_*}{h_K^2} \right]} & \text{if } h_* > h_K, \\ 1 & \text{if } h_* \leq h_K. \end{cases} \quad (2.10)$$

with  $h_*$ , an estimate for the exact solution of the water depth in the star region obtained using the depth positivity condition. It reads as

$$h_* = \frac{1}{2}(h_L + h_R) - \frac{1}{4}(u_R - u_L)(h_L - h_R)/(\sqrt{gh_L} + \sqrt{gh_R}) \quad (2.11)$$

In case of dry-bed conditions, the wave speeds are estimated as the exact dry front speed, i.e.:

$$S_i = \begin{cases} u_i - 2\sqrt{gh_i} & \text{if } h_i = 0, \\ \text{usual estimate} & \text{if } h_i > 0, \end{cases} \quad (2.12)$$

$$S_j = \begin{cases} u_j + 2\sqrt{gh_j} & \text{if } h_j = 0, \\ \text{usual estimate} & \text{if } h_j > 0. \end{cases}$$

And the middle estimated wave speed  $S_*$  corresponds to the front wave speed in case of dry-bed problem.

The expression of the states  $\mathbf{U}_{*i}, \mathbf{U}_{*j}$  and the middle wave speed  $S_*$  can be found in the book of Toro (2009).

### 2.3.4 Numerical Stability

Numerical stability is assured by choosing the time step  $\Delta t$  for time integration such that it obeys the Courant-Friedrichs-Lewy (CFL) condition. In 2-D the Courant number (CFL) can be defined as follows:

$$CFL = \frac{(\sqrt{u^2 + v^2} + c)\Delta t}{r_i} \quad (2.13)$$

where  $r_i$  is the radius of the inscribed circle that defines the element center (Figure 2.3),  $u, v$  are the corresponding velocities of the element and  $c = \sqrt{gh}$ . The HLLC scheme is stable for

$$0 < CFL \leq 1 \quad (2.14)$$

### 2.3.5 Discretisation of Source terms

#### 2.3.5.1 Bed Slope Source Term

The bed slope source term (eq. 1.2) is discretized using the robust modified-state approach proposed by Duran et al. (2013). The discretization presents a motionless steady states-preserving scheme:

$$\mathbf{S}_{b,i} = \sum_{j=1}^m l_{ij} \mathbf{S}_{b,ij} = \sum_{j=1}^m l_{ij} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ gH_{ij}^*(z_i - \bar{z}_{ij}) \vec{\mathbf{n}}_{ij} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.15)$$

where  $\bar{z}_{ij} = \check{z}_{ij} - \Delta_{ij}$  with  $\check{z}_{ij} = \max(z_{bi}, z_{bj})$  the maximum bed elevation between cells  $i$  and  $j$  and  $\Delta_{ij} = \max(0, \check{z}_{ij} - H_i)$ .  $H_{ij}^*$  is the approximated value of the water surface elevation  $H$  at the cell interface  $\Gamma_{ij}$ .

#### 2.3.5.2 Friction Source Term

We handle the inhomogeneous character of system eq. 1.1 due to the presence of frictional source terms by adopting a robust splitting technique Toro (2001). We initially consider the initial value problem (IVP)

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} PDE : \mathcal{A}(\mathbf{U}) = \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{U}) \\ IC : \mathbf{U}(x, y, 0) = \mathbf{U}_i^n \end{array} \right\} \text{IVP} .$$

where  $\mathcal{A}$  represents the advective operator

$$\mathcal{A}(\mathbf{U}) = \frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{F}_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial \mathbf{F}_y}{\partial y} = \mathbf{0} ,$$

and  $\mathcal{S}$  represents the frictional source term operator.

The numerical solution is then obtained by subsequently integrating *two* initial value problems (IVPs):

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} ODEs : \frac{d\mathbf{U}}{dt} = \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{U}) \\ ICs : \mathbf{U}(x, y, 0) = \mathbf{U}_i^n \end{array} \right\} \xrightarrow{\Delta t} \bar{\mathbf{U}}_i \quad \text{IVP1} ,$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} PDEs : \mathcal{A}(\mathbf{U}) = 0 \\ ICs : \mathbf{U}(x, y, 0) = \bar{\mathbf{U}}_i \end{array} \right\} \xrightarrow{\Delta t} \mathbf{U}_i^{n+1} \quad \text{IVP2} ,$$

The initial condition (IC) for IVP1 is  $\mathbf{U}_i^n$ , corresponding to the initial condition of the full problem IVP. The solution of IVP1 is obtained solving a system of ordinary differential equations (ODEs) after integration by a time step  $\Delta t$  and is denoted by  $\bar{\mathbf{U}}_i$ . IVP2 is then integrated by a time step  $\Delta t$ , with initial condition given by the solution of IVP1  $\bar{\mathbf{U}}_i$ . The solution of IVP2  $\mathbf{U}_i^{n+1}$  is obtained solving an hyperbolic homogeneous system of partial differential equations (PDEs) and represents the approximate solution of the full problem



IVP.\ Since we adopt an implicit second-order Runge-Kutta method for solving the ODEs systems IVP1 and an explicit finite volume method for solving IVP2, the integration time step  $\Delta t$  is determined accordingly with the *CFL* stability condition for IVP2.

### 2.3.5.3 External Source Term

An external source is defined as specific mass flux  $\delta$  (m/s), uniformly distributed over a number of elements of the domain with a specific surface area. The external source can either be specified as discharge ( $m^3/s$ ) or precipitation intensity (mm/h) for a specific region of the domain. The external source value is divided among the cells composing the region and converted to cell specific mass flux  $\delta_i$ . The volume allocated is characterized by different behaviors:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Exact:} \quad & S_{h,i} = \delta_i \\
 \text{Available:} \quad & S_{h,i} = \delta_i && \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
 & S_{h,i} = \max(\delta_i, -h_i) && \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0 \\
 \text{Infinity:} \quad & S_{h,i} = \delta_i && \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
 & S_{h,i} = -h_i && \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.16}$$

Where  $h_i$  is the water depth of the element  $i$ . The external source volume is added to the initial water volume.

$$h_i^{t+1} = h_i^t + S_{h,i} \cdot \Delta t \tag{2.17}$$

## 2.3.6 Solution Procedure

The numerical solution procedure of BASEMENT explains how the discretised shallow water equation (eq. 1.1) is solved inside a defined time step  $\Delta t$  through a sequence of loops over the edges or cells (Figure 2.4).

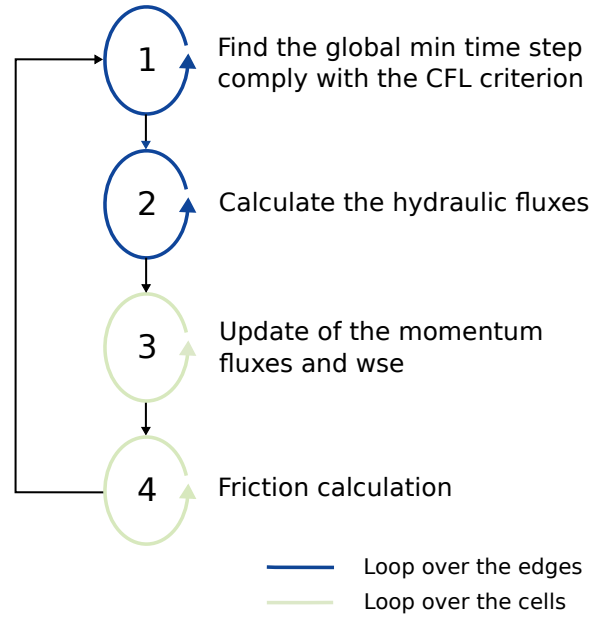
First, a global minimum time step  $\Delta t$  should be defined. Then, the hydraulic fluxes (liquid mass, x-momentum and y-momentum) are calculated with a HLLC Riemann solver at the element edges according to the initial states of the left and right cells (Section 2.3.3). Subsequently, the hydraulic state variables i.e. cell centered quantities are updated and finally, the friction (source term) is calculated using an implicit scheme, thus looping twice over the cell.

## 2.4 Numerical solution of Morphodynamics

### 2.4.1 Numerical solution of the Exner equation

#### 2.4.1.1 Fundamentals

The Exner equation assures that sediment mass is conserved in the bed and is used to model the riverbed time evolution. The rate of sediment transport is determined using a closure equation. The cell centered finite volume approach is used to discretise the Exner equation and in particular the HLL approximate Riemann solver with a wave speed



**Figure 2.4** Numerical solution procedure of hydrodynamic simulation for each time step  $\Delta t$

estimator defined in Soares-Frazão and Zech (2011) is adopted. The shallow water and the Exner equations create a system of equations that is solved in a decoupled way (Figure 2.2). This approach makes the assumption that the bed load flux is much slower than the water flow velocity (Soares-Frazão and Zech, 2011).

#### 2.4.1.2 Spatial discretization

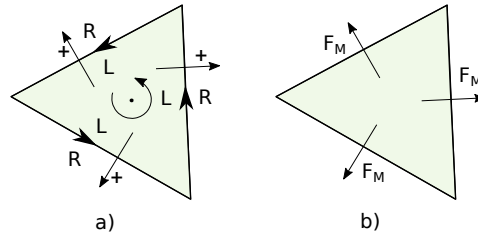
In order to discretise the the Exner equation, we use the same unstructured mesh adopted for the hydrodynamic part and the same finite volume approach. As a consequence, the bed level  $z_B$  is defined at the element center and is equally distributed over the element.

By integrating the Exner equation in the control volume  $V = [\Omega_i] \times [t^n, t^{n+1}]$ , we obtain

$$z_{Bi}^{n+1} = z_{Bi}^n - \frac{\Delta t}{|\Omega_i|} \sum_{j=1}^3 [q_{Bij} \cdot l_{ij}] + \Delta t \mathbf{S}_i . \quad (2.18)$$

The calculation of the sediment flux at the cell interface proceeds as follows:

1. loop over the cells and calculate:
  1. correction terms for the bed-load vector directions (if selected by the user), therefore:
    - calculation of the local bed slope, for the lateral-transport correction (see section Section 1.2.2.6.1)
    - calculation of the local curvature of the flow field, for the spiral flow correction (see section Section 1.2.2.6.2)



**Figure 2.5** a) Sign convention for the edge direction: counterclockwise b) Positive morphological flux direction at edges: from left (L) to right (R)

2. loop over the cell interfaces and:

1. calculate the flux projection along the normal vector ( $n_{ij,x}, n_{ij,y}$  of edge  $\Gamma_{ij}$ , i.e.:  $q_{Bi,n} = q_{Bi,x} \cdot n_{ij,x} + q_{Bi,y} \cdot n_{ij,y}$  and  $q_{Bj,n} = q_{Bj,x} \cdot n_{ij,x} + q_{Bj,y} \cdot n_{ij,y}$  with  $j=1,2,3$ )
  2. compute the flux at the interface using the approximate HLL Riemann solver at the interface
- Evaluate the wave speeds at the interface. this is obtained following the approach proposed by Soares-Frazão and Zech (2011), for which the wave speeds can be calculated as an approximation of the smallest eigenvalue of the system of governing equations, i.e. Shallow water and Exner. They read:

$$\lambda_1 = 1/2(u_n - c - \sqrt{(u_n - c)^2 + 4a_2c^2}) \quad (2.19)$$

$$\lambda_2 = 1/2(u_n - c + \sqrt{(u_n - c)^2 + 4a_2c^2}) \quad (2.20)$$

where  $u_n = u \cdot n_{ij,x} + v \cdot n_{ij,y}$ ,  $c = \sqrt{gh}$  and  $a_2 = \frac{\partial q_{b,n}}{\partial q_n}$  which is the derivative of the bed load discharge in the normal flow direction with respect to the hydraulic flux direction. Then the speeds estimate are

$$S^- = \min(\lambda_{1,L}, \lambda_{1,R}) \quad (2.21)$$

and

$$S^+ = \max(\lambda_{2,L}, \lambda_{2,R}) \quad (2.22)$$

- Flux calculation:

$$q_{Bij}^{HLL} = \begin{cases} q_{Bi,n} & \text{if } S^- \geq 0, \\ \frac{q_{Bi,n}S^+ - q_{Bj,n}S^- + S^-S^+(z_{Bj} - z_{Bi})}{S^+ - S^-} & \text{if } S^- < 0 < S^+, \\ q_{Bj,n} & \text{if } S^+ \leq 0. \end{cases} \quad (2.23)$$

The convention for the positive bed load flux direction is the same as for the hydrodynamic flux and is presented on Figure 2.5

### 2.4.1.3 Discretization of External Source Term

The source term  $S_{l_b}$  describes a local input or removal of sediment mass into a river.

An external source is defined as specific mass flux  $\delta$  (m/s), uniformly distributed over a number of elements of the domain (region) with a specific surface area. The external source can be specified as the total volume flux ( $m^3/s$ ) for a specific region of the domain. The external source value is divided among the cells composing the region and converted to cell specific mass flux  $\delta_i$ . The volume allocated is characterized by different behaviors:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Exact:} & \quad S_{b,i} = \delta_i \\
 \text{Available:} & \quad S_{b,i} = \delta_i & \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
 & \quad S_{b,i} = \max(\delta_i, -(z_{Fix} - z_i)) & \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0 \\
 \text{Infinity:} & \quad S_{b,i} = \delta_i & \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
 & \quad S_{b,i} = -(z_{Fix} - z_i) & \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0
 \end{aligned} \tag{2.24}$$

Where  $z_i$  is the bottom elevation and  $z_{Fix}$  the fixed bed elevation of the element  $i$ . The external source volume is added to the initial bottom elevation of element  $i$ .

$$z_i^{t+1} = z_i^t + S_{b,i} \cdot \Delta t \tag{2.25}$$

## 2.4.2 Solution procedure

The numerical solution procedure of BASEMENT explains how the discretised Exner equation (eq. 1.22) is solved through a sequence of loops over the edges or cells (Figure 2.6).

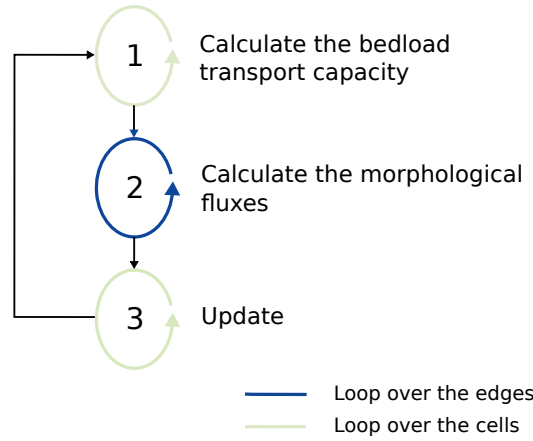
In the numerical simulation, the hydrodynamic and morphodynamic simulations are performed in a decoupled way. The morphodynamic simulation is executed after the hydrodynamic simulation, using the hydraulic fluxes to calculate the morphological fluxes. This approach assumes that the sediment transport is much slower than the water velocity, which is an accurate assumption for the numerical modelling of slow flood with morphological changes occurring over a long period (Soares-Frazão and Zech, 2011). The numerical solution procedure of Figure 2.6 is performed after the step 4 of Figure 2.4 inside the same time step  $\Delta t$ .

The numerical solution of the Exner equation starts with a loop over the cells in order to find the bedload transport capacity  $q_b$  with a potential correction due to a curvature effect or lateral bed slope. Then, the morphological fluxes  $F_M$  are calculated at the element edges and finally, the bed elevation  $z_b$  is updated over the cells.

## 2.5 Numerical solution of Advection-Diffusion equation

### 2.5.1 Numerical solution of the advective part

The scalar advection equation assures that scalar masses are conserved in the flow column when moving with the surrounding fluid. The same cell centered finite volume approach used for the SWE is employed in scalar advection, namely the HLLC approximate Riemann solver. In order to discretize the scalar advection equation, the same unstructured mesh adopted for the hydrodynamic and morphodynamic parts is used, as is the same finite



**Figure 2.6** Numerical solution procedure of morphodynamic simulation for each time step  $\Delta t$

volume approach. As a consequence, the scalar concentration  $\phi_s$  is defined at the element center and is equally distributed over the element. This numerical approach is applied to turbulent kinetic energy quantities ( $\kappa, \epsilon$ ), suspended sediment and tracers.

By integrating the scalar advection equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi_k h + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( \phi_k h u_i - h D_{s_{ij}} \frac{\partial \phi_k}{\partial x_j} \right) = S_{\phi_k} \quad (2.26)$$

in the control volume  $V_i = [\Omega_i] \times [t^n, t^{n+1}]$  for a generic quantity defined by  $\phi_k$ , we obtain:

$$q_{\phi_k i}^{n+1} = q_{\phi_k i}^n - \frac{\Delta t}{|\Omega_i|} \sum_{j=1}^3 [f_{\phi_k, ij} \cdot l_{ij}] + \Delta t S_{\phi_k, i} \quad (2.27)$$

where  $f_{s_{ij}}$  is the intercell scalar advective flux. The scalar advective fluxes at the cell interface are defined by:

$$f_{\phi_k, ij} = \frac{q_{\phi_k i}}{h} q_m \quad \text{if } q_m > 0 \quad (2.28)$$

$$f_{\phi_k, ij} = \frac{q_{\phi_k j}}{h} q_m \quad \text{if } q_m < 0 \quad (2.29)$$

where  $q_m$  is the hydrodynamic mass flux. This approach significantly reduces the numerical effort involved in the computation of the numerical fluxes for each species, without sacrificing accuracy or stability.

### 2.5.2 Numerical solution of the diffusive part

The diffusion equation ensures that quantities are conserved in the flow column due when turbulent or molecular exchanges originate some form of mixing. By integrating the scalar diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi_k h - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \left( h D_{s_{ij}} \frac{\partial \phi_k}{\partial x_j} \right) = 0 \quad (2.30)$$

in the control volume  $V_i = [\Omega_i] \times [t^n, t^{n+1}]$  we obtain:

$$q_{\phi_k i}^{n+1} = q_{\phi_k i}^n - \frac{\Delta t}{|\Omega_i|} \sum_{j=1}^3 [d_{\phi_k, ij} \cdot l_{ij}] \quad (2.31)$$

where  $d_{\phi_k, ij}$  is the intercell scalar diffusive flux. To compute the solution of the diffusive terms, the SVT solver Vanzo et al. (2016) is employed. It involves the augmentation of the existing system with a set of new conservation quantities and equations for each diffusive specie  $\phi_k$ . The role of these new variables is to allow a relaxation of the diffusive part, such as

$$\lim_{\zeta \rightarrow 0} \psi_x^{\phi_k} = \partial_x \phi_k, \quad \lim_{\zeta \rightarrow 0} \psi_y^{\phi_k} = \partial_y \phi_k \quad (2.32)$$

where  $\psi$  denotes a relaxation variable, subject to the following relations

$$\partial_t \psi_x^{\phi_k} - \partial_x \frac{\phi_k}{\zeta} = -\frac{\psi_x^{\phi_k}}{\zeta}, \quad \partial_t \psi_y^{\phi_k} - \partial_y \frac{\phi_k}{\zeta} = -\frac{\psi_y^{\phi_k}}{\zeta} \quad (2.33)$$

which are formally denoted as the relaxation sub-system. The main purpose of this relaxation is to preserve the hyperbolicity of the numerical scheme, as demonstrated by Vanzo et al. (2016). To construct the diffusive numerical fluxes, the following Riemann problem is considered along some edge normal as

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t \Phi_k + \partial_\xi D_{n_{ij}} = 0, & \xi \in \mathbb{R}, t > 0, \\ \Phi_k(\xi, 0) = \begin{cases} \Phi_{k_i}^n & \text{if } \xi < 0, \\ \Phi_{k_j}^n & \text{if } \xi > 0, \end{cases} \end{cases} \quad (2.34)$$

where  $\Phi_k$  is the conserved variables vector and  $D_n$  is the diffusive numerical flux vector. The structure of this Riemann problem is composed of three unique waves (from a total of six). One of these is always a stationary contact discontinuity and the two remaining waves are symmetrical, with the same propagation speed in opposite directions. The problem thus becomes characterized by a single intermediate state  $\Phi_k^*$  where the fluxes are directly evaluated. The exact expression for the intermediate state  $\Phi_k^*$  and numerical  $D(\Phi_k^*)_n$  can be found in Vanzo et al. (2016).

### 2.5.3 Discretization of external source terms

The source term  $S_{\phi_k}$  describes a local input or removal of scalar mass into a river. An external source is defined as specific mass flux  $\delta$  (m/s), uniformly distributed over a number of elements of the domain (region) with a specific surface area. The external source can be specified as the total volume flux ( $m^3/s$ ) for a specific region of the domain. The external source value is divided among the cells composing the region and converted to cell specific mass flux  $\delta_i$ . The volume allocated is characterized by different behaviors:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
\text{Exact:} & S_{\phi_{k,i}} = \delta_i \\
\text{Available:} & S_{\phi_{k,i}} = \delta_i \quad \text{if } \delta_{\phi_k} \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
& S_{\phi_{k,i}} = \max(\delta_i, -q_{\phi_{k,i}}) \quad \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0 \\
\text{Infinity:} & S_{\phi_{k,i}} = \delta_i \quad \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t > 0 \\
& S_{\phi_{k,i}} = -q_{\phi_{k,i}} \quad \text{if } \delta_i \cdot \Delta t < 0
\end{array} \tag{2.35}$$

The external source volume is then added to the initial value of element  $i$  through a first-order Euler approach.

$$q_{\phi_{k,i}}^{t+1} = q_{\phi_{k,i}}^t + S_{\phi_{k,i}} \cdot \Delta t \tag{2.36}$$

### 2.5.4 Solution procedure

The numerical solution for all modules involving scalar advection and diffusive terms – turbulence, suspended sediment and tracers – is obtained as follows:

1. Loop over the cell interfaces and compute the advective flux at each interface:
  - Retrieve the hydrodynamic fluxes  $\mathbf{F}_{ij}$  at the interface between cells  $i$  and  $j$  and extract the first component of the flux vector (mass fluxes) to the variable  $q_m$ .
  - For each specie, perform the advective flux calculation through the simplified HLLC solver described above
2. Loop over the cell interfaces and compute the diffusive flux at each interface:
  - Retrieve the hydrodynamic and scalar quantities  $\mathbf{Q}_h$  and  $\Phi_k$  at the interface between cells  $i$  and  $j$  perform the flux calculation using the SVT solver
3. Define the diffusion specific timestep and update the global minimum time step  $\Delta t$
4. Loop over the cells and update the conserved quantities with the fluxes at each of its interfaces:
  - Retrieve and add the advective fluxes  $f_{\phi ij}$  and diffusive fluxes  $d_{\phi ij}$  at each of the three interfaces.
  - For each specie, perform the update as prescribed in Equations 2.27, 2.31, and 2.36.
5. Add the external source terms

## 2.6 Numerical solution of the thermodynamics equation

The numerical integration of the evolution equation for the thermodynamics (eq. eq. 1.83) is analogous to the numerical strategy of section Section 2.5. Hence, for details of the numerical integration of the advective and diffusive parts, please cf. sections Section 2.5.1 and Section 2.5.2, respectively.

### 2.6.1 Discretization of external source terms

The temperature source terms (right-hand side of eq. Section 1.6.2) describes the thermal exchanges of the column of water with the atmosphere and the river bed. The calculated source contributions (i.e. energy fluxes) are added/subtracted exactly from the thermal mass of each computational cell. Then the external source volume is then added to the initial value of element  $i$  through a first-order semi-implicit Euler approach:

$$q_T^{t+1} = q_T^t + \frac{(H_{atm} + H_b)}{(c_w \rho_w - \Delta t \partial_T (H_{atm} + H_b))} \cdot \Delta t \quad (2.37)$$

### 2.6.2 Solution procedure

The numerical solution is equivalent to the other modules involving scalar advection and diffusive terms and it is obtained as follows:

1. Loop over the cell interfaces and compute the advective flux at each interface:
  - Retrieve the hydrodynamic fluxes at the interface between cells  $i$  and  $j$  and extract the first component of the flux vector (mass fluxes), then perform the advective flux calculation as in Section 2.5.1.
1. Loop over the cell interfaces and compute the diffusive flux at each interface:
  - Retrieve the hydrodynamic and thermal quantities  $\mathbf{Q}$  and  $\mathbf{q}_T$  at the interface between cells  $i$  and  $j$  perform the flux calculation using the SVT solver (Section 2.5.2).
3. Define the diffusion specific timestep and update the global minimum time step  $\Delta t$
4. Loop over the cells and update the conserved quantities with the fluxes at each of its interfaces:
  - Retrieve and add the thermal advective and diffusive fluxes at each of the three interfaces.
  - Perform the update of the advective and diffusive thermal fluxes, equivalent to equations eq. 2.27} and eq. 2.31}, respectively.
1. Add the external source terms with eq. eq. 2.37.



---

## References

- Ashida, K. and Michiue, M. (1971). An investigation over river bed degradation downstream of a dam. *Proceedings of the 14th congress of IAHR*, No. 3: 247–256. Paris, France.
- Beltaos, S. (2013). River ice formation. *Committee on river ice processes; the environment, Canadian geophysical . . .*.
- Bertoldi, W., Siviglia, A., Tettamanti, S., Toffolon, M., Vetsch, D. and Francalanci, S. (2014). Modeling vegetation controls on fluvial morphological trajectories. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 41(20): 7167–7175.
- Bezzola, G.R. (2002). Fließwiderstand und Sohlenstabilität natürlicher Gerinne [PhD thesis]: Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich.
- Caissie, D. (2006). The thermal regime of rivers: A review. *Freshwater biology*, 51(8): 1389–1406.
- Caissie, D. and Luce, C.H. (2017). [Quantifying streambed advection and conduction heat fluxes](#). *Water Resources Research*, 53(2): 1595–1624.
- Caponi, F. and Siviglia, A. (2018). [Numerical modeling of plant root controls on gravel bed river morphodynamics](#). *Geophysical Research Letters*, 45(17): 9013–9023.
- Caponi, F., Vetsch, D.F. and Siviglia, A. (2020). [A model study of the combined effect of above and below ground plant traits on the ecomorphodynamics of gravel bars](#). *Scientific Reports*, 10(1): 1–14.
- Chen, X., Ma, J. and Dey, S. (2010). Sediment transport on arbitrary slopes: Simplified model. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering-ASCE*, 136(5): 311–317.
- Dugdale, S.J., Hannah, D.M. and Malcolm, I.A. (2017). River temperature modelling: A review of process-based approaches and future directions. *Earth-Science Reviews*, 175: 97–113.
- Duran, A., Liang, Q. and Marche, F. (2013). On the well-balanced numerical discretization of shallow water equations on unstructured meshes. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 235: 565–586.
- Edmaier, K., Burlando, P. and Perona, P. (2011). Mechanisms of vegetation uprooting by flow in alluvial non-cohesive sediment. *Hydrology and Earth System Sciences*, 15(5): 1615–1627.
- Engelund, F. (1974). Flow and bed topography in channel bends. *Journal of the Hydraulics Division ASCE*, 100(11): 1631–1648.

- Engelund, F. and Hansen, E. (1972). A monograph on sediment transport in alluvial streams. *Teknisk Forlag, Copenhagen*.
- Exner, F.M. (1925). Ueber die wechselwirkung zwischen wasser und geschiebe in fluessen. Akademie der Wissenschaften, Mathematische Naturwissenschaft Abt. IIa, Wien, Austria.
- Grass, A.J. (1981). Sediment transport by waves and currents. *University College, London, Dept. of Civil Engineering, London, UK*.
- Hirano, M. (1971). *Proceedings of the japan society of civil engineers*, No. 1971: 55–65. *Japan Society of Civil Engineers*.
- Hunziker, R.P. (1995). Fraktionsweiser Geschiebetransport [PhD thesis]: Eidgenössische Technische Hochschule Zürich.
- Hunziker, R.P. and Jaeggi, M.N.R. (2002). Grain sorting processes. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering-Asce*, 128(12): 1060–1068.
- Ikeda, S. (1982). Lateral Bed-Load Transport on Side Slopes. *Journal of the Hydraulics Division-Asce*, 108(11): 1369–1373.
- Lin, B. (1984). Current Study of Unsteady Transport of Sediment in China. *Proceedings of Japan-China Bilateral Seminar on River Hydraulics and Engineering Experiences, Proceedings of Japan-China Bilateral Seminar on River Hydraulics; Engineering Experiences, Tokyo-Kyoto –Sapporo.*, Tokyo-Kyoto-Sapporo.
- Malcherek, A. (2001). Sedimenttransport und Morphodynamik. Vorlesungsskript der Universität der Bundeswehr München, München.
- Meyer-Peter, E. and Müller, R. (1948). Formulas for Bed-Load Transport, 2nd Meeting IAHR, Stockholm, Sweden.
- Parker, G. (1990). Surface-based bedload transport relation for gravel rivers. *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 28(4): 417–436.
- Parker, G. and Sutherland, A.J. (1990). Fluvial armor. *Journal of Hydraulic Research*.
- Rozovskii, I.L. (1961). Flow of Water in Bends of Open Channels. *Academy of Science of the Ukrainian S.S.R, Institute of Hydrology; Hydraulic Engineering*.
- Shields, A. (1936). Anwendungen der Ähnlichkeitsmechanik und der Turbulenzforschung auf die Geschiebebewegungen. Mitteilung der Preussischen Versuchsanstalt für Wasserbau und Schiffbau. Berlin, Deutschland.
- Siviglia, A. and Toro, E.F. (2009). [WAF method and splitting procedure for simulating hydro-and thermal-peaking waves in open-channel flows](#). *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, 135(8): 651–662.
- Smart, G.M. and Jaeggi, M.N.R. (1983). Sediment Transport on Steep Slopes. *VAW-Mitteilung 64*, Versuchsanstalt für Wasserbau,Hydrologie und Glaziologie (VAW). Zürich, ETH Zürich.
- Soares-Frazão, S. and Zech, Y. (2011). HLLC scheme with novel wave-speed estimators appropriate for two-dimensional shallow-water flow on erodible bed. *International Journal for Numerical Methods in Fluids*, 66.
- Talmon, A.M., Struiksmā, N. and van Mierlo, M.C.L.M. (1995). Laboratory measurements of the direction of sediment transport on transverse alluvial-bed slopes. *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 33(4): 495–517.
- Toro, S., E. F. (1994). Restoration of the contact surface in the HLL-Riemann solver. *Shock Waves*, 4: 25–34.
- Toro, E.F. (2009). Riemann Solvers and Numerical Methods for Fluid Dynamics. *Springer-Verlag*, Berlin.
- Toro, E.F. (2001). Shock-Capturing Methods for Free-Surface Shallow Flows. *John Wiley*, Chichester, New York.

- van Rijn, L.C. (1989). Handbook Sediment Transport by Current and Waves. *Delft Hydraulics Laboratory*, Delft, The Netherlands.
- van Rijn, L.C. (1984). Sediment Transport, Part II: Suspended Load Transport. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, ASCE*, 110(11): 1613–1641.
- Vanzo, D., Peter, S., Vonwiller, L., Bürgler, M., Weberndorfer, M., Siviglia, A., Conde, D. and Vetsch, D.F. (2021). BASEMENT v3: A modular freeware for river process modelling over multiple computational backends. *Environmental Modelling & Software*, 143: 105102.
- Vanzo, D., Siviglia, A. and Toro, E.F. (2016). Pollutant transport by shallow water equations on unstructured meshes: Hyperbolization of the model and numerical solution via a novel flux splitting scheme. *Journal of Computational Physics*, 321: 1–20.
- Vonwiller, L. (2017). Numerical Modeling of Morphological Response of Gravel-Bed Rivers to Sediment Supply. *VAW-Mitteilung 246*, Versuchsanstalt für Wasserbau, Hydrologie und Glaziologie (VAW). Zürich, ETH Zürich.
- Wilcock, P.T. and Crowe, J.C. (2003). Surface-based transport model for mixed-size sediment. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*.
- Wu, W., Wang, S.S.Y. and Jia, Y. (2000). Non-Uniform Sediment Transport in Alluvial Rivers. *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 38(6): 427–434.
- Xu, Y. (1998). Numerical Modeling of Suspended Sediment Transport in Rivers [PhD thesis]: Mitteilung 98, Institut für Wasserbau, Universität Stuttgart.
- Yalin, M. and Silva, A. da (2001). Fluvial processes. *International Association of Hydraulic Engineering; Research (IAHR), Delft, The Netherlands*.
- Zhang, R.J. (1961). River Dynamics. *Industry Press*, Beijing, China.
- Zyserman, J.A. and Fredsøe, J. (1994). Data Analysis of Bed Concentration of Suspended Sediment. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering, ASCE*, 120(9): 1021–1042.





**BASIC SIMULATION ENVIRONMENT  
FOR MODELLING OF ENVIRONMENTAL  
FLOWS AND NATURAL HAZARDS**

---

# **APPENDIX**

**VERSION 4.1.0  
JUNE 2024**



**BASEMENT**



---

## Third Party Software

### 1.1 Third party software licenses

Abseil

Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004  
<https://www.apache.org/licenses/>

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

#### 1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).



"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
  - (a) You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
  - (b) You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and
  - (c) You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
  - (d) If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained

within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.
8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

APPENDIX: How to apply the Apache License to your work.

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[ ]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License");  
you may not use this file except in compliance with the License.  
You may obtain a copy of the License at

<https://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.

## Brotli

Copyright (c) 2009, 2010, 2013-2016 by the Brotli Authors.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Bzip2

-----  
This program, "bzip2", the associated library "libbzip2", and all documentation, are copyright (C) 1996-2019 Julian R Seward. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
3. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must

not be misrepresented as being the original software.

4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Julian Seward, jseward@acm.org  
bzip2/libbzip2 version 1.0.8 of 13 July 2019

---

## Curl

### COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2022, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>, and many contributors, see the THANKS file.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

## Double-conversion

Copyright 2006-2011, the V8 project authors. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT

LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### Egl-registry

Copyright (c) 2008-2018 The Khronos Group Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and/or associated documentation files (the "Materials"), to deal in the Materials without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Materials, and to permit persons to whom the Materials are furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Materials.

THE MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE MATERIALS OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE MATERIALS.

---

Copyright 2013-2020 The Khronos Group Inc.  
Copyright 2007-2020 The Khronos Group Inc.

SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

### Eigen3

Eigen is primarily MPL2 licensed. See COPYING.MPL2 and these links:  
<http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/2.0/>  
<http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/2.0/FAQ.html>

Some files contain third-party code under BSD or LGPL licenses, whence the other COPYING.\* files here.

All the LGPL code is either LGPL 2.1-only, or LGPL 2.1-or-later.  
For this reason, the COPYING.LGPL file contains the LGPL 2.1 text.

If you want to guarantee that the Eigen code that you are #including is licensed under the MPL2 and possibly more permissive licenses (like BSD), #define this preprocessor symbol:

```
EIGEN_MPL2_ONLY
```

For example, with most compilers, you could add this to your project CXXFLAGS:  
-DEIGEN\_MPL2\_ONLY

This will cause a compilation error to be generated if you #include any code that is LGPL licensed.

---

Copyright (c) 2011, Intel Corporation. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of Intel Corporation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

Minpack Copyright Notice (1999) University of Chicago. All rights reserved

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The end-user documentation included with the redistribution, if any, must include the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the University of Chicago, as Operator of Argonne National Laboratory.

Alternately, this acknowledgment may appear in the software itself, if and wherever such third-party acknowledgments normally appear.

4. WARRANTY DISCLAIMER. THE SOFTWARE IS SUPPLIED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER, THE UNITED STATES, THE UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY, AND THEIR EMPLOYEES: (1) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, (2) DO NOT ASSUME ANY LEGAL LIABILITY OR RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE ACCURACY, COMPLETENESS, OR USEFULNESS OF THE SOFTWARE, (3) DO NOT REPRESENT THAT USE OF THE SOFTWARE WOULD NOT INFRINGE PRIVATELY OWNED RIGHTS, (4) DO NOT WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL FUNCTION UNINTERRUPTED, THAT IT IS ERROR-FREE OR THAT ANY ERRORS WILL BE CORRECTED.

5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. IN NO EVENT WILL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER, THE UNITED STATES, THE UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF ENERGY, OR THEIR EMPLOYEES: BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OF ANY KIND OR NATURE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF PROFITS OR LOSS OF DATA, FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER, WHETHER

SUCH LIABILITY IS ASSERTED ON THE BASIS OF CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF ANY OF SAID PARTIES HAS BEEN WARNED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS OR DAMAGES.

### Expat

Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper  
Copyright (c) 2001-2019 Expat maintainers

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### Freetype

#### FREETYPE LICENSES

The FreeType 2 font engine is copyrighted work and cannot be used legally without a software license. In order to make this project usable to a vast majority of developers, we distribute it under two mutually exclusive open-source licenses.

This means that *you* must choose *one* of the two licenses described below, then obey all its terms and conditions when using FreeType 2 in any of your projects or products.

- The FreeType License, found in the file ``docs/FTL.TXT``, which is similar to the original BSD license *with* an advertising clause that forces you to explicitly cite the FreeType project in your product's documentation. All details are in the license file. This license is suited to products which don't use the GNU General Public License.

Note that this license is compatible to the GNU General Public License version 3, but not version 2.

- The GNU General Public License version 2, found in ``docs/GPLv2.TXT`` (any later version can be used also), for programs which already use the GPL. Note that the FTL is incompatible with GPLv2 due to its advertisement clause.

The contributed BDF and PCF drivers come with a license similar to that of the X Window System. It is compatible to the above two licenses (see files ``src/bdf/README`` and ``src/pcf/README``). The same holds for the source code files ``src/base/fthash.c`` and ``include/freetype/internal/fthash.h``; they were part of the BDF driver in earlier FreeType versions.

The gzip module uses the zlib license (see ``src/gzip/zlib.h``) which too is compatible to the above two licenses.

The MD5 checksum support (only used for debugging in development builds) is in the public domain.

--- end of LICENSE.TXT ---

### Glew

The OpenGL Extension Wrangler Library  
Copyright (C) 2002-2007, Milan Ikits <milan ikits[at]ieee org>  
Copyright (C) 2002-2007, Marcelo E. Magallon <mmagallo[at]debian org>  
Copyright (C) 2002, Lev Povalahev  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* The name of the author may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Mesa 3-D graphics library  
Version: 7.0

Copyright (C) 1999-2007 Brian Paul All Rights Reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL BRIAN PAUL BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2007 The Khronos Group Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and/or associated documentation files (the "Materials"), to deal in the Materials without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Materials, and to



permit persons to whom the Materials are furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Materials.

THE MATERIALS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE MATERIALS OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE MATERIALS.

### Glibc-queue

Copyright (C) 1991-2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

The GNU C Library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

The GNU C Library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with the GNU C Library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA

\* All code incorporated from 4.4 BSD is distributed under the following license:

Copyright (C) 1991 Regents of the University of California.  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. [This condition was removed.]
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### Gtest

Copyright 2008, Google Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Harfbuzz

HarfBuzz is licensed under the so-called "Old MIT" license. Details follow. For parts of HarfBuzz that are licensed under different licenses see individual files names COPYING in subdirectories where applicable.

Copyright © 2010,2011,2012,2013,2014,2015,2016,2017,2018,2019,2020 Google, Inc.  
 Copyright © 2018,2019,2020 Ebrahim Byagowi  
 Copyright © 2019,2020 Facebook, Inc.  
 Copyright © 2012 Mozilla Foundation  
 Copyright © 2011 Codethink Limited  
 Copyright © 2008,2010 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies)  
 Copyright © 2009 Keith Stribley  
 Copyright © 2009 Martin Hosken and SIL International  
 Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson  
 Copyright © 2005,2006,2020,2021 Behdad Esfahbod  
 Copyright © 2005 David Turner  
 Copyright © 2004,2007,2008,2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc.  
 Copyright © 1998-2004 David Turner and Werner Lemberg

For full copyright notices consult the individual files in the package.

Permission is hereby granted, without written agreement and without license or royalty fees, to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that the above copyright notice and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies of this software.

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, AND THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

**Hdf5**

Copyright Notice and License Terms for  
HDF5 (Hierarchical Data Format 5) Software Library and Utilities

HDF5 (Hierarchical Data Format 5) Software Library and Utilities  
Copyright 2006 by The HDF Group.

NCSA HDF5 (Hierarchical Data Format 5) Software Library and Utilities  
Copyright 1998–2006 by The Board of Trustees of the University of Illinois.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without  
modification, are permitted for any purpose (including commercial purposes)  
provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,  
this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice,  
this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation  
and/or materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of The HDF Group, the name of the University, nor the  
name of any Contributor may be used to endorse or promote products derived  
from this software without specific prior written permission from  
The HDF Group, the University, or the Contributor, respectively.

**DISCLAIMER:**

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE HDF GROUP AND THE CONTRIBUTORS  
"AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED. IN NO  
EVENT SHALL THE HDF GROUP OR THE CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES  
SUFFERED BY THE USERS ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF  
ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

You are under no obligation whatsoever to provide any bug fixes, patches, or  
upgrades to the features, functionality or performance of the source code  
("Enhancements") to anyone; however, if you choose to make your Enhancements  
available either publicly, or directly to The HDF Group, without imposing a  
separate written license agreement for such Enhancements, then you hereby  
grant the following license: a non-exclusive, royalty-free perpetual license  
to install, use, modify, prepare derivative works, incorporate into other  
computer software, distribute, and sublicense such enhancements or derivative  
works thereof, in binary and source code form.

Limited portions of HDF5 were developed by Lawrence Berkeley National  
Laboratory (LBNL). LBNL's Copyright Notice and Licensing Terms can be  
found here: COPYING\_LBNL\_HDF5 file in this directory or at  
[http://support.hdfgroup.org/ftp/HDF5/releases/COPYING\\_LBNL\\_HDF5](http://support.hdfgroup.org/ftp/HDF5/releases/COPYING_LBNL_HDF5).

Contributors: National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA) at  
the University of Illinois, Fortner Software, Unidata Program Center  
(netCDF), The Independent JPEG Group (JPEG), Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler  
(gzip), and Digital Equipment Corporation (DEC).

Portions of HDF5 were developed with support from the Lawrence Berkeley  
National Laboratory (LBNL) and the United States Department of Energy  
under Prime Contract No. DE-AC02-05CH11231.

Portions of HDF5 were developed with support from Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory and the United States Department of Energy under Prime Contract No. DE-AC52-07NA27344.

-----

Portions of HDF5 were developed with support from the University of California, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (UC LLNL). The following statement applies to those portions of the product and must be retained in any redistribution of source code, binaries, documentation, and/or accompanying materials:

This work was partially produced at the University of California, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (UC LLNL) under contract no. W-7405-ENG-48 (Contract 48) between the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) and The Regents of the University of California (University) for the operation of UC LLNL.

**DISCLAIMER:**

THIS WORK WAS PREPARED AS AN ACCOUNT OF WORK SPONSORED BY AN AGENCY OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT. NEITHER THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT NOR THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA NOR ANY OF THEIR EMPLOYEES, MAKES ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OR ASSUMES ANY LIABILITY OR RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE ACCURACY, COMPLETENESS, OR USEFULNESS OF ANY INFORMATION, APPARATUS, PRODUCT, OR PROCESS DISCLOSED, OR REPRESENTS THAT ITS USE WOULD NOT INFRINGE PRIVATELY- OWNED RIGHTS. REFERENCE HEREIN TO ANY SPECIFIC COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS, PROCESS, OR SERVICE BY TRADE NAME, TRADEMARK, MANUFACTURER, OR OTHERWISE, DOES NOT NECESSARILY CONSTITUTE OR IMPLY ITS ENDORSEMENT, RECOMMENDATION, OR FAVORING BY THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT OR THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA. THE VIEWS AND OPINIONS OF AUTHORS EXPRESSED HEREIN DO NOT NECESSARILY STATE OR REFLECT THOSE OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT OR THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, AND SHALL NOT BE USED FOR ADVERTISING OR PRODUCT ENDORSEMENT PURPOSES.

-----

**HighFive**

Boost Software License - Version 1.0 - August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

**Icu**

UNICODE, INC. LICENSE AGREEMENT - DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE

See Terms of Use <<https://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>>  
for definitions of Unicode Inc.'s Data Files and Software.

NOTICE TO USER: Carefully read the following legal agreement.  
BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING UNICODE INC.'S  
DATA FILES ("DATA FILES"), AND/OR SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"),  
YOU UNEQUIVOCALLY ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, ALL OF THE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT.  
IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, DISTRIBUTE OR USE  
THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

#### COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright © 1991-2022 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved.  
Distributed under the Terms of Use in <https://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining  
a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation  
(the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation  
(the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software  
without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use,  
copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of  
the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files  
or Software are furnished to do so, provided that either  
(a) this copyright and permission notice appear with all copies  
of the Data Files or Software, or  
(b) this copyright and permission notice appear in associated  
Documentation.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF  
ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE  
WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND  
NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS.  
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS  
NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL  
DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE,  
DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER  
TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR  
PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder  
shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale,  
use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior  
written authorization of the copyright holder.

---

#### Third-Party Software Licenses

This section contains third-party software notices and/or additional  
terms for licensed third-party software components included within ICU  
libraries.

---

ICU License - ICU 1.8.1 to ICU 57.1

#### COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1995-2016 International Business Machines Corporation and others  
All rights reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining  
a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the  
"Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including  
without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish,  
distribute, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons  
to whom the Software is furnished to do so, provided that the above  
copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in all copies of  
the Software and that both the above copyright notice(s) and this

permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

All trademarks and registered trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective owners.

-----  
Chinese/Japanese Word Break Dictionary Data (cjdict.txt)

```
# The Google Chrome software developed by Google is licensed under
# the BSD license. Other software included in this distribution is
# provided under other licenses, as set forth below.
#
# The BSD License
# http://opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php
# Copyright (C) 2006-2008, Google Inc.
#
# All rights reserved.
#
# Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
# modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
#
# Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,
# this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
# Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above
# copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following
# disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with
# the distribution.
# Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its
# contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from
# this software without specific prior written permission.
#
# THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND
# CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES,
# INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF
# MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE
# DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE
# LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR
# CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF
# SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR
# BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF
# LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING
# NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS
# SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
#
#
# The word list in cjdict.txt are generated by combining three word lists
# listed below with further processing for compound word breaking. The
# frequency is generated with an iterative training against Google web
# corpora.
#
# * Libtabe (Chinese)
# - https://sourceforge.net/project/?group_id=1519
# - Its license terms and conditions are shown below.
```

```

#
# * IPADIC (Japanese)
#   - http://chasen.aist-nara.ac.jp/chasen/distribution.html
#   - Its license terms and conditions are shown below.
#
# -----COPYING.libtabe ---- BEGIN-----
#
# /*
# * Copyright (c) 1999 TaBE Project.
# * Copyright (c) 1999 Pai-Hsiang Hsiao.
# * All rights reserved.
# *
# * Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
# * modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions
# * are met:
# *
# * . Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright
# * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
# * . Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
# * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in
# * the documentation and/or other materials provided with the
# * distribution.
# * . Neither the name of the TaBE Project nor the names of its
# * contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived
# * from this software without specific prior written permission.
# *
# * THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS
# * "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT
# * LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS
# * FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
# * REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT,
# * INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES
# * (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR
# * SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)
# * HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT,
# * STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)
# * ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED
# * OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
# */
#
# /*
# * Copyright (c) 1999 Computer Systems and Communication Lab,
# * Institute of Information Science, Academia
# * Sinica. All rights reserved.
# *
# * Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
# * modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions
# * are met:
# *
# * . Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright
# * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
# * . Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright
# * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in
# * the documentation and/or other materials provided with the
# * distribution.
# * . Neither the name of the Computer Systems and Communication Lab
# * nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or
# * promote products derived from this software without specific
# * prior written permission.
# *
# * THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS
# * "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT
# * LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS
# * FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
# * REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT,
# * INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES
# * (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR
# * SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)
# * HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT,
# * STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)

```

```

# * ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED
# * OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
# */
#
# Copyright 1996 Chih-Hao Tsai @ Beckman Institute,
# University of Illinois
# c-tsai4@uiuc.edu http://casper.beckman.uiuc.edu/~c-tsai4
# -----COPYING.libtabe-----END-----
#
# -----COPYING.ipadic-----BEGIN-----
#
# Copyright 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003 Nara Institute of Science
# and Technology. All Rights Reserved.
#
# Use, reproduction, and distribution of this software is permitted.
# Any copy of this software, whether in its original form or modified,
# must include both the above copyright notice and the following
# paragraphs.
#
# Nara Institute of Science and Technology (NAIST),
# the copyright holders, disclaims all warranties with regard to this
# software, including all implied warranties of merchantability and
# fitness, in no event shall NAIST be liable for
# any special, indirect or consequential damages or any damages
# whatsoever resulting from loss of use, data or profits, whether in an
# action of contract, negligence or other tortuous action, arising out
# of or in connection with the use or performance of this software.
#
# A large portion of the dictionary entries
# originate from ICOT Free Software. The following conditions for ICOT
# Free Software applies to the current dictionary as well.
#
# Each User may also freely distribute the Program, whether in its
# original form or modified, to any third party or parties, PROVIDED
# that the provisions of Section 3 ("NO WARRANTY") will ALWAYS appear
# on, or be attached to, the Program, which is distributed substantially
# in the same form as set out herein and that such intended
# distribution, if actually made, will neither violate or otherwise
# contravene any of the laws and regulations of the countries having
# jurisdiction over the User or the intended distribution itself.
#
# NO WARRANTY
#
# The program was produced on an experimental basis in the course of the
# research and development conducted during the project and is provided
# to users as so produced on an experimental basis. Accordingly, the
# program is provided without any warranty whatsoever, whether express,
# implied, statutory or otherwise. The term "warranty" used herein
# includes, but is not limited to, any warranty of the quality,
# performance, merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose of
# the program and the nonexistence of any infringement or violation of
# any right of any third party.
#
# Each user of the program will agree and understand, and be deemed to
# have agreed and understood, that there is no warranty whatsoever for
# the program and, accordingly, the entire risk arising from or
# otherwise connected with the program is assumed by the user.
#
# Therefore, neither ICOT, the copyright holder, or any other
# organization that participated in or was otherwise related to the
# development of the program and their respective officials, directors,
# officers and other employees shall be held liable for any and all
# damages, including, without limitation, general, special, incidental
# and consequential damages, arising out of or otherwise in connection
# with the use or inability to use the program or any product, material
# or result produced or otherwise obtained by using the program,
# regardless of whether they have been advised of, or otherwise had
# knowledge of, the possibility of such damages at any time during the

```



```

# project or thereafter. Each user will be deemed to have agreed to the
# foregoing by his or her commencement of use of the program. The term
# "use" as used herein includes, but is not limited to, the use,
# modification, copying and distribution of the program and the
# production of secondary products from the program.
#
# In the case where the program, whether in its original form or
# modified, was distributed or delivered to or received by a user from
# any person, organization or entity other than ICOT, unless it makes or
# grants independently of ICOT any specific warranty to the user in
# writing, such person, organization or entity, will also be exempted
# from and not be held liable to the user for any such damages as noted
# above as far as the program is concerned.
#
# -----COPYING.ipadic-----END-----

```

---

Lao Word Break Dictionary Data (laodict.txt)

```

# Copyright (C) 2016 and later: Unicode, Inc. and others.
# License & terms of use: http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html
# Copyright (c) 2015 International Business Machines Corporation
# and others. All Rights Reserved.
#
# Project: https://github.com/rober42539/lao-dictionary
# Dictionary: https://github.com/rober42539/lao-dictionary/laodict.txt
# License: https://github.com/rober42539/lao-dictionary/LICENSE.txt
#         (copied below)
#
# This file is derived from the above dictionary version of Nov 22, 2020
# -----
# Copyright (C) 2013 Brian Eugene Wilson, Robert Martin Campbell.
# All rights reserved.
#
# Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
# modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
#
# Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this
# list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary
# form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and
# the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials
# provided with the distribution.
#
# THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS
# "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT
# LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS
# FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE
# COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT,
# INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES
# (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR
# SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)
# HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT,
# STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)
# ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED
# OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
# -----

```

---

Burmese Word Break Dictionary Data (burmesedict.txt)

```

# Copyright (c) 2014 International Business Machines Corporation
# and others. All Rights Reserved.
#
# This list is part of a project hosted at:
#   github.com/kanyawtech/myanmar-karen-word-lists
#
# -----
# Copyright (c) 2013, LeRoy Benjamin Sharon

```

```

# All rights reserved.
#
# Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without
# modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions
# are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above
# copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following
# disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the
# above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following
# disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided
# with the distribution.
#
# Neither the name Myanmar Karen Word Lists, nor the names of its
# contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived
# from this software without specific prior written permission.
#
# THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND
# CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES,
# INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF
# MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE
# DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS
# BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL,
# EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED
# TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE,
# DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON
# ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR
# TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF
# THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF
# SUCH DAMAGE.
# -----

```

#### Time Zone Database

ICU uses the public domain data and code derived from Time Zone Database for its time zone support. The ownership of the TZ database is explained in BCP 175: Procedure for Maintaining the Time Zone Database section 7.

```

# 7. Database Ownership
#
# The TZ database itself is not an IETF Contribution or an IETF
# document. Rather it is a pre-existing and regularly updated work
# that is in the public domain, and is intended to remain in the
# public domain. Therefore, BCPs 78 [RFC5378] and 79 [RFC3979] do
# not apply to the TZ Database or contributions that individuals make
# to it. Should any claims be made and substantiated against the TZ
# Database, the organization that is providing the IANA
# Considerations defined in this RFC, under the memorandum of
# understanding with the IETF, currently ICANN, may act in accordance
# with all competent court orders. No ownership claims will be made
# by ICANN or the IETF Trust on the database or the code. Any person
# making a contribution to the database or code waives all rights to
# future claims in that contribution or in the TZ Database.

```

#### Google double-conversion

Copyright 2006-2011, the V8 project authors. All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

\* Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---

File: aclocal.m4 (only for ICU4C)  
Section: pkg.m4 - Macros to locate and utilise pkg-config.

Copyright © 2004 Scott James Remnant <scott@netsplit.com>.  
Copyright © 2012-2015 Dan Nicholson <dbn.lists@gmail.com>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

As a special exception to the GNU General Public License, if you distribute this file as part of a program that contains a configuration script generated by Autoconf, you may include it under the same distribution terms that you use for the rest of that program.

(The condition for the exception is fulfilled because ICU4C includes a configuration script generated by Autoconf, namely the `configure` script.)

---

File: config.guess (only for ICU4C)

This file is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, see <<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/>>.

As a special exception to the GNU General Public License, if you

distribute this file as part of a program that contains a configuration script generated by Autoconf, you may include it under the same distribution terms that you use for the rest of that program. This Exception is an additional permission under section 7 of the GNU General Public License, version 3 ("GPLv3").

(The condition for the exception is fulfilled because ICU4C includes a configuration script generated by Autoconf, namely the `configure` script.)

-----  
File: install-sh (only for ICU4C)

Copyright 1991 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

### Jsoncpp

The JsonCpp library's source code, including accompanying documentation, tests and demonstration applications, are licensed under the following conditions...

Baptiste Lepilleur and The JsonCpp Authors explicitly disclaim copyright in all jurisdictions which recognize such a disclaimer. In such jurisdictions, this software is released into the Public Domain.

In jurisdictions which do not recognize Public Domain property (e.g. Germany as of 2010), this software is Copyright (c) 2007-2010 by Baptiste Lepilleur and The JsonCpp Authors, and is released under the terms of the MIT License (see below).

In jurisdictions which recognize Public Domain property, the user of this software may choose to accept it either as 1) Public Domain, 2) under the conditions of the MIT License (see below), or 3) under the terms of dual Public Domain/MIT License conditions described here, as they choose.

The MIT License is about as close to Public Domain as a license can get, and is described in clear, concise terms at:

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MIT\\_License](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MIT_License)

The full text of the MIT License follows:

=====  
Copyright (c) 2007-2010 Baptiste Lepilleur and The JsonCpp Authors

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,

EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

=====  
(END LICENSE TEXT)

The MIT license is compatible with both the GPL and commercial software, affording one all of the rights of Public Domain with the minor nuisance of being required to keep the above copyright notice and license text in the source code. Note also that by accepting the Public Domain "license" you can re-license your copy using whatever license you like.

### Libharu

Copyright (C) 1999-2006 Takeshi Kanno  
Copyright (C) 2007-2009 Antony Dovgal

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty.

In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

### Libiconv

GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the library GPL. It is numbered 2 because it goes with version 2 of the ordinary GPL.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Library General Public License, applies to some specially designated Free Software Foundation software, and to any other libraries whose authors decide to use it. You can use it for your libraries, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for

this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link a program with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients so that they can relink them with the library, after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Our method of protecting your rights has two steps: (1) copyright the library, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

Also, for each distributor's protection, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free library. If the library is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original version, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that companies distributing free software will individually obtain patent licenses, thus in effect transforming the program into proprietary software. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License, which was designed for utility programs. This license, the GNU Library General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries. This license is quite different from the ordinary one; be sure to read it in full, and don't assume that anything in it is the same as in the ordinary license.

The reason we have a separate public license for some libraries is that they blur the distinction we usually make between modifying or adding to a program and simply using it. Linking a program with a library, without changing the library, is in some sense simply using the library, and is analogous to running a utility program or application program. However, in a textual and legal sense, the linked executable is a combined work, a derivative of the original library, and the ordinary General Public License treats it as such.

Because of this blurred distinction, using the ordinary General Public License for libraries did not effectively promote software sharing, because most developers did not use the libraries. We concluded that weaker conditions might promote sharing better.

However, unrestricted linking of non-free programs would deprive the users of those programs of all benefit from the free status of the libraries themselves. This Library General Public License is intended to permit developers of non-free programs to use free libraries, while preserving your freedom as a user of such programs to change the free libraries that are incorporated in them. (We have not seen how to achieve this as regards changes in header files, but we have achieved it as regards changes in the actual functions of the Library.) The hope is that this will lead to faster development of free libraries.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, while the latter only

works together with the library.

Note that it is possible for a library to be covered by the ordinary General Public License rather than by this special one.

GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Library General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) The modified work must itself be a software library.
- b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or

table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License.



Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also compile or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

- a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)
- b) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.
- c) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.
- d) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license

restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

- a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.
- b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that

system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Library General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### Appendix: How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify it under the terms of the GNU Library General Public
License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
```

```
This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
Library General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU Library General Public
License along with this library; if not, write to the Free
Software Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston,
MA 02110-1301, USA
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the
library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.
```

```
<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990
Ty Coon, President of Vice
```

That's all there is to it!

## Libjpeg-turbo

### libjpeg-turbo Licenses =====

libjpeg-turbo is covered by three compatible BSD-style open source licenses:

- The IJG (Independent JPEG Group) License, which is listed in [README.ijg] (README.ijg)

```
This license applies to the libjpeg API library and associated programs
(any code inherited from libjpeg, and any modifications to that code.)
```

- The Modified (3-clause) BSD License, which is listed below

```
This license covers the TurboJPEG API library and associated programs, as
well as the build system.
```

- The [zlib License] (<https://opensource.org/licenses/Zlib>)

```
This license is a subset of the other two, and it covers the libjpeg-turbo
SIMD extensions.
```

### Complying with the libjpeg-turbo Licenses =====

This section provides a roll-up of the libjpeg-turbo licensing terms, to the best of our understanding.

1. If you are distributing a modified version of the libjpeg-turbo source, then:

1. You cannot alter or remove any existing copyright or license notices from the source.

```

**Origin**
- Clause 1 of the IJG License
- Clause 1 of the Modified BSD License
- Clauses 1 and 3 of the zlib License

```

2. You must add your own copyright notice to the header of each source file you modified, so others can tell that you modified that file (if there is not an existing copyright header in that file, then you can simply add a notice stating that you modified the file.)

```

**Origin**
- Clause 1 of the IJG License
- Clause 2 of the zlib License

```

3. You must include the IJG README file, and you must not alter any of the copyright or license text in that file.

```

**Origin**
- Clause 1 of the IJG License

```

2. If you are distributing only libjpeg-turbo binaries without the source, or if you are distributing an application that statically links with libjpeg-turbo, then:

1. Your product documentation must include a message stating:

```

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG
Group.

```

```

**Origin**
- Clause 2 of the IJG license

```

2. If your binary distribution includes or uses the TurboJPEG API, then your product documentation must include the text of the Modified BSD License (see below.)

```

**Origin**
- Clause 2 of the Modified BSD License

```

3. You cannot use the name of the IJG or The libjpeg-turbo Project or the contributors thereof in advertising, publicity, etc.

```

**Origin**
- IJG License
- Clause 3 of the Modified BSD License

```

4. The IJG and The libjpeg-turbo Project do not warrant libjpeg-turbo to be free of defects, nor do we accept any liability for undesirable consequences resulting from your use of the software.

```

**Origin**
- IJG License
- Modified BSD License
- zlib License

```

The Modified (3-clause) BSD License  
 =====

Copyright (C)2009-2022 D. R. Commander. All Rights Reserved.  
 Copyright (C)2015 Viktor Szathmáry. All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice,

- this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
  - Neither the name of the libjpeg-turbo Project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS", AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### Why Three Licenses?

=====

The zlib License could have been used instead of the Modified (3-clause) BSD License, and since the IJG License effectively subsumes the distribution conditions of the zlib License, this would have effectively placed libjpeg-turbo binary distributions under the IJG License. However, the IJG License specifically refers to the Independent JPEG Group and does not extend attribution and endorsement protections to other entities. Thus, it was desirable to choose a license that granted us the same protections for new code that were granted to the IJG for code derived from their software.

#### Liblzma

#### XZ Utils Licensing

=====

Different licenses apply to different files in this package. Here is a rough summary of which licenses apply to which parts of this package (but check the individual files to be sure!):

- liblzma is in the public domain.
- xz, xzdec, and lzmadec command line tools are in the public domain unless GNU getopt\_long had to be compiled and linked in from the lib directory. The getopt\_long code is under GNU LGPLv2.1+.
- The scripts to grep, diff, and view compressed files have been adapted from gzip. These scripts and their documentation are under GNU GPLv2+.
- All the documentation in the doc directory and most of the XZ Utils specific documentation files in other directories are in the public domain.
- Translated messages are in the public domain.
- The build system contains public domain files, and files that are under GNU GPLv2+ or GNU GPLv3+. None of these files end up in the binaries being built.
- Test files and test code in the tests directory, and debugging utilities in the debug directory are in the public domain.
- The extra directory may contain public domain files, and files that are under various free software licenses.

You can do whatever you want with the files that have been put into the public domain. If you find public domain legally problematic, take the previous sentence as a license grant. If you still find the lack of copyright legally problematic, you have too many lawyers.

As usual, this software is provided "as is", without any warranty.

If you copy significant amounts of public domain code from XZ Utils into your project, acknowledging this somewhere in your software is polite (especially if it is proprietary, non-free software), but naturally it is not legally required. Here is an example of a good notice to put into "about box" or into documentation:

This software includes code from XZ Utils <<https://tukaani.org/xz/>>.

The following license texts are included in the following files:

- COPYING.LGPLv2.1: GNU Lesser General Public License version 2.1
- COPYING.GPLv2: GNU General Public License version 2
- COPYING.GPLv3: GNU General Public License version 3

Note that the toolchain (compiler, linker etc.) may add some code pieces that are copyrighted. Thus, it is possible that e.g. liblzma binary wouldn't actually be in the public domain in its entirety even though it contains no copyrighted code from the XZ Utils source package.

If you have questions, don't hesitate to ask the author(s) for more information.

## Libogg

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Libpng

COPYRIGHT NOTICE, DISCLAIMER, and LICENSE  
=====

PNG Reference Library License version 2

- 
- \* Copyright (c) 1995-2019 The PNG Reference Library Authors.
  - \* Copyright (c) 2018-2019 Cosmin Truta.
  - \* Copyright (c) 2000-2002, 2004, 2006-2018 Glenn Randers-Pehrson.
  - \* Copyright (c) 1996-1997 Andreas Dilger.
  - \* Copyright (c) 1995-1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

The software is supplied "as is", without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, title, and non-infringement. In no event shall the Copyright owners, or anyone distributing the software, be liable for any damages or other liability, whether in contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of, or in connection with the software, or the use or other dealings in the software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated, but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

-----  
 PNG Reference Library License version 1 (for libpng 0.5 through 1.6.35)  
 -----

libpng versions 1.0.7, July 1, 2000, through 1.6.35, July 15, 2018 are Copyright (c) 2000-2002, 2004, 2006-2018 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, are derived from libpng-1.0.6, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-1.0.6 with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

Simon-Pierre Cadieux  
 Eric S. Raymond  
 Mans Rullgard  
 Cosmin Truta  
 Gilles Vollant  
 James Yu  
 Mandar Sahastrabudhe  
 Google Inc.  
 Vadim Barkov

and with the following additions to the disclaimer:

There is no warranty against interference with your enjoyment of the library or against infringement. There is no warranty that our efforts or the library will fulfill any of your particular purposes or needs. This library is provided with all faults, and the entire risk of satisfactory quality, performance, accuracy, and effort is with the user.

Some files in the "contrib" directory and some configure-generated files that are distributed with libpng have other copyright owners, and are released under other open source licenses.

libpng versions 0.97, January 1998, through 1.0.6, March 20, 2000, are Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Glenn Randers-Pehrson, are derived from libpng-0.96, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.96, with the following individuals added to the



list of Contributing Authors:

Tom Lane  
Glenn Randers-Pehrson  
Willem van Schaik

libpng versions 0.89, June 1996, through 0.96, May 1997, are Copyright (c) 1996-1997 Andreas Dilger, are derived from libpng-0.88, and are distributed according to the same disclaimer and license as libpng-0.88, with the following individuals added to the list of Contributing Authors:

John Bowler  
Kevin Bracey  
Sam Bushell  
Magnus Holmgren  
Greg Roelofs  
Tom Tanner

Some files in the "scripts" directory have other copyright owners, but are released under this license.

libpng versions 0.5, May 1995, through 0.88, January 1996, are Copyright (c) 1995-1996 Guy Eric Schalnat, Group 42, Inc.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Contributing Authors" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Andreas Dilger  
Dave Martindale  
Guy Eric Schalnat  
Paul Schmidt  
Tim Wegner

The PNG Reference Library is supplied "AS IS". The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including, without limitation, the warranties of merchantability and of fitness for any purpose. The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. assume no liability for direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages, which may result from the use of the PNG Reference Library, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Permission is hereby granted to use, copy, modify, and distribute this source code, or portions hereof, for any purpose, without fee, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this source code must not be misrepresented.
2. Altered versions must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source.
3. This Copyright notice may not be removed or altered from any source or altered source distribution.

The Contributing Authors and Group 42, Inc. specifically permit, without fee, and encourage the use of this source code as a component to supporting the PNG file format in commercial products. If you use this source code in a product, acknowledgment is not required but would be appreciated.

## Libtheora

Copyright (C) 2002-2009 Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### Libxml2

Except where otherwise noted in the source code (e.g. the files hash.c, list.c and the trio files, which are covered by a similar licence but with different Copyright notices) all the files are:

Copyright (C) 1998-2012 Daniel Veillard. All Rights Reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

#### Lz4

LZ4 Library  
Copyright (c) 2011-2016, Yann Collet  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

\* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

\* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED

WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### Netcdf-c

Copyright 2018 Unidata

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### Nlohmann-json

MIT License

Copyright (c) 2013-2022 Niels Lohmann

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

#### Op2

BSD 2-Clause License - <http://www.opensource.org/licenses/bsd-license.php>

This file is part of the OP2 distribution.

Copyright (c) 2011, Gihan Mudalige, Istvan Reguly, Mike Giles, and others.  
Please see the AUTHORS file in the main source directory for details.  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without  
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* The name of Mike Giles may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## OpenMesh

OpenMesh is licensed under the 3-clause BSD License. See the LICENSE file for the complete license.

```

/* ===== *
 * * *
 * OpenMesh *
 * Copyright (c) 2001-2015, RWTH-Aachen University *
 * Department of Computer Graphics and Multimedia *
 * All rights reserved. *
 * www.openmesh.org *
 * * *
 *-----*
 * This file is part of OpenMesh. *
 *-----*
 * * *
 * Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without *
 * modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions *
 * are met: *
 * * *
 * 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, *
 * this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. *
 * * *
 * 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright *
 * notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the *
 * documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. *
 * * *
 * 3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its *
 * contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from *
 * this software without specific prior written permission. *
 * * *
 * THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS *
 * "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED *
 * TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A *
 * PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER *
 * OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, *
 * EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, *
 * PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR *
 * PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF *
 * LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING *
 * NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS *
 *

```

```
* SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.      *
*                                                                      *
* =====*\
```

## Openssl

### Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004  
<https://www.apache.org/licenses/>

#### TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

##### 1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and

subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
  - (a) You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
  - (b) You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and
  - (c) You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
  - (d) If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.
5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions.

Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.
8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

## Perl

### PCRE2 LICENCE

-----

PCRE2 is a library of functions to support regular expressions whose syntax and semantics are as close as possible to those of the Perl 5 language.

Releases 10.00 and above of PCRE2 are distributed under the terms of the "BSD" licence, as specified below, with one exemption for certain binary redistributions. The documentation for PCRE2, supplied in the "doc" directory, is distributed under the same terms as the software itself. The data in the testdata directory is not copyrighted and is in the public domain.

The basic library functions are written in C and are freestanding. Also included in the distribution is a just-in-time compiler that can be used to optimize pattern matching. This is an optional feature that can be omitted when the library is built.

### THE BASIC LIBRARY FUNCTIONS

-----

Written by: Philip Hazel  
Email local part: Philip.Hazel

Email domain: gmail.com

Retired from University of Cambridge Computing Service,  
Cambridge, England.

Copyright (c) 1997-2021 University of Cambridge  
All rights reserved.

#### PCRE2 JUST-IN-TIME COMPILATION SUPPORT

-----

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg  
Email local part: hzmester  
Email domain: freemail.hu

Copyright(c) 2010-2021 Zoltan Herczeg  
All rights reserved.

#### STACK-LESS JUST-IN-TIME COMPILER

-----

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg  
Email local part: hzmester  
Email domain: freemail.hu

Copyright(c) 2009-2021 Zoltan Herczeg  
All rights reserved.

#### THE "BSD" LICENCE

-----

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without  
modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notices,  
this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright  
notices, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the  
documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of the University of Cambridge nor the names of any  
contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this  
software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS"  
AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE  
IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE  
ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE  
LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR  
CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF  
SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS  
INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN  
CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE)  
ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE  
POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### EXEMPTION FOR BINARY LIBRARY-LIKE PACKAGES

-----

The second condition in the BSD licence (covering binary redistributions) does  
not apply all the way down a chain of software. If binary package A includes  
PCRE2, it must respect the condition, but if package B is software that  
includes package A, the condition is not imposed on package B unless it uses  
PCRE2 independently.



End

## **Pegt1-2**

The MIT License (MIT)

Copyright (c) 2007-2020 Dr. Colin Hirsch and Daniel Frey

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## **Pkgconf**

Copyright (c) 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018  
pkgconf authors (see AUTHORS file in source directory).

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

This software is provided 'as is' and without any warranty, express or implied. In no event shall the authors be liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

## **Proj**

All source, data files and other contents of the PROJ package are available under the following terms. Note that the PROJ 4.3 and earlier was "public domain" as is common with US government work, but apparently this is not a well defined legal term in many countries. Frank Warmerdam placed everything under the following MIT style license because he believed it is effectively the same as public domain, allowing anyone to use the code as they wish, including making proprietary derivatives.

Initial PROJ 4.3 public domain code was put as Frank Warmerdam as copyright holder, but he didn't mean to imply he did the work. Essentially all work was done by Gerald Evenden.

Copyright information can be found in source files.

-----

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Pugixml

### MIT License

Copyright (c) 2006-2022 Arseny Kapoulkine

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## Qt5-base

### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

The Qt Toolkit is Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.  
Contact: <http://www.qt.io/licensing/>

You may use, distribute and copy the Qt Toolkit under the terms of GNU Lesser General Public License version 3, which is displayed below. This license makes reference to the version 3 of the GNU General Public License, which you can find in the LICENSE.GPL3 file.

-----

### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<http://fsf.org/>>  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this licensedocument, but changing it is not allowed.

This version of the GNU Lesser General Public License incorporates the terms and conditions of version 3 of the GNU General Public License, supplemented by the additional permissions listed below.

#### 0. Additional Definitions.

As used herein, "this License" refers to version 3 of the GNU Lesser General Public License, and the "GNU GPL" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"The Library" refers to a covered work governed by this License, other than an Application or a Combined Work as defined below.

An "Application" is any work that makes use of an interface provided by the Library, but which is not otherwise based on the Library. Defining a subclass of a class defined by the Library is deemed a mode of using an interface provided by the Library.

A "Combined Work" is a work produced by combining or linking an Application with the Library. The particular version of the Library with which the Combined Work was made is also called the "Linked Version".

The "Minimal Corresponding Source" for a Combined Work means the Corresponding Source for the Combined Work, excluding any source code for portions of the Combined Work that, considered in isolation, are based on the Application, and not on the Linked Version.

The "Corresponding Application Code" for a Combined Work means the object code and/or source code for the Application, including any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the Combined Work from the Application, but excluding the System Libraries of the Combined Work.

#### 1. Exception to Section 3 of the GNU GPL.

You may convey a covered work under sections 3 and 4 of this License without being bound by section 3 of the GNU GPL.

#### 2. Conveying Modified Versions.

If you modify a copy of the Library, and, in your modifications, a facility refers to a function or data to be supplied by an Application that uses the facility (other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked), then you may convey a copy of the modified version:

- a) under this License, provided that you make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an Application does not supply the function or data, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful, or
- b) under the GNU GPL, with none of the additional permissions of this License applicable to that copy.

#### 3. Object Code Incorporating Material from Library Header Files.

The object code form of an Application may incorporate material from a header file that is part of the Library. You may convey such object code under terms of your choice, provided that, if the incorporated material is not limited to numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, or small macros, inline functions and templates (ten or fewer lines in length), you do both of the following:

- a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the object code that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License.
- b) Accompany the object code with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.

#### 4. Combined Works.

You may convey a Combined Work under terms of your choice that, taken together, effectively do not restrict modification of the portions of the Library contained in the Combined Work and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications, if you also do each of the following:

- a) Give prominent notice with each copy of the Combined Work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License.

- b) Accompany the Combined Work with a copy of the GNU GPL and this license document.
- c) For a Combined Work that displays copyright notices during execution, include the copyright notice for the Library among these notices, as well as a reference directing the user to the copies of the GNU GPL and this license document.
- d) Do one of the following:
  - 0) Convey the Minimal Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, and the Corresponding Application Code in a form suitable for, and under terms that permit, the user to recombine or relink the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version to produce a modified Combined Work, in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.
  - 1) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (a) uses at run time a copy of the Library already present on the user's computer system, and (b) will operate properly with a modified version of the Library that is interface-compatible with the Linked Version.
- e) Provide Installation Information, but only if you would otherwise be required to provide such information under section 6 of the GNU GPL, and only to the extent that such information is necessary to install and execute a modified version of the Combined Work produced by recombining or relinking the Application with a modified version of the Linked Version. (If you use option 4d0, the Installation Information must accompany the Minimal Corresponding Source and Corresponding Application Code. If you use option 4d1, you must provide the Installation Information in the manner specified by section 6 of the GNU GPL for conveying Corresponding Source.)

#### 5. Combined Libraries.

You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side by side in a single library together with other library facilities that are not Applications and are not covered by this License, and convey such a combined library under terms of your choice, if you do both of the following:

- a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities, conveyed under the terms of this License.
- b) Give prominent notice with the combined library that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

#### 6. Revised Versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library as you received it specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU Lesser General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that published version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library as you received it does not specify a version number of the GNU Lesser General Public License, you may choose any version of the GNU Lesser General Public License ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Library as you received it specifies that a proxy can decide whether future versions of the GNU Lesser General Public License shall apply, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of any version is permanent authorization for you to choose that version for the Library.

## Qwt

### Qwt License

Version 1.0, January 1, 2003

The Qwt library and included programs are provided under the terms of the GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE (LGPL) with the following exceptions:

1. Widgets that are subclassed from Qwt widgets do not constitute a derivative work.
2. Static linking of applications and widgets to the Qwt library does not constitute a derivative work and does not require the author to provide source code for the application or widget, use the shared Qwt libraries, or link their applications or widgets against a user-supplied version of Qwt.

If you link the application or widget to a modified version of Qwt, then the changes to Qwt must be provided under the terms of the LGPL in sections 1, 2, and 4.

3. You do not have to provide a copy of the Qwt license with programs that are linked to the Qwt library, nor do you have to identify the Qwt license in your program or documentation as required by section 6 of the LGPL.

However, programs must still identify their use of Qwt. The following example statement can be included in user documentation to satisfy this requirement:

```
[program/widget] is based in part on the work of
the Qwt project (http://qwt.sf.net).
```

---

### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts  
as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence  
the version number 2.1.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages--typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You

can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free

library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion

of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) The modified work must itself be a software library.
- b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.



If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

b) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if

the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.

- c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.
- d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.
- e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

- a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.
- b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR

PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
```

```
This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
Lesser General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the
library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.
```

```
<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990
Ty Coon, President of Vice
```

That's all there is to it!

**Shapelib**

GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
Version 2, June 1991

```
Copyright (C) 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies
```

of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the library GPL. It is numbered 2 because it goes with version 2 of the ordinary GPL.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Library General Public License, applies to some specially designated Free Software Foundation software, and to any other libraries whose authors decide to use it. You can use it for your libraries, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link a program with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients so that they can relink them with the library, after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Our method of protecting your rights has two steps: (1) copyright the library, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

Also, for each distributor's protection, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free library. If the library is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original version, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that companies distributing free software will individually obtain patent licenses, thus in effect transforming the program into proprietary software. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License, which was designed for utility programs. This license, the GNU Library General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries. This license is quite different from the ordinary one; be sure to read it in full, and don't assume that anything in it is the same as in the ordinary license.

The reason we have a separate public license for some libraries is that they blur the distinction we usually make between modifying or adding to a program and simply using it. Linking a program with a library, without changing the library, is in some sense simply using the library, and is analogous to running a utility program or application program. However, in a textual and legal sense, the linked executable is a combined work, a derivative of the original library, and the ordinary General Public License treats it as such.

Because of this blurred distinction, using the ordinary General Public License for libraries did not effectively promote software sharing, because most developers did not use the libraries. We concluded that weaker conditions might promote sharing better.

However, unrestricted linking of non-free programs would deprive the users of those programs of all benefit from the free status of the libraries themselves. This Library General Public License is intended to permit developers of non-free programs to use free libraries, while preserving your freedom as a user of such programs to change the free libraries that are incorporated in them. (We have not seen how to achieve this as regards changes in header files, but we have achieved it as regards changes in the actual functions of the Library.) The hope is that this will lead to faster development of free libraries.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, while the latter only works together with the library.

Note that it is possible for a library to be covered by the ordinary General Public License rather than by this special one.

GNU LIBRARY GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Library General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a

fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) The modified work must itself be a software library.
- b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany

it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also compile or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

- a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)
- b) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials



specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

c) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

d) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not

excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Library General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN

WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### Appendix: How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify it under the terms of the GNU Library General Public
License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
```

```
This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
Library General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU Library General Public
License along with this library; if not, write to the Free
Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the
library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.
```

```
<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990
Ty Coon, President of Vice
```

That's all there is to it!

#### SQLite3

SQLite is in the Public Domain.  
<http://www.sqlite.org/copyright.html>

#### Tecio

Tecplot, Inc. LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR Tecplot's TecIO ("TecIO")

TecIO is a software library provided by Tecplot, Inc. to enable software developed by others to write data in Tecplot's proprietary binary file

formats, .plt and .szplt, and to read Tecplot binary data in .plt and .szplt format. TecIO is included with Tecplot 360 EX and may also be downloaded from <http://www.tecplot.com/downloads/tecio-library/>.

This license applies to versions of the TecIO library distributed with Tecplot 360 EX 2016 R2 and later and covers both the serial and parallel (MPI) versions of the library.

1. This LICENSE AGREEMENT is between Tecplot, Inc. ("Tecplot"), and the Individual or Organization ("Licensee") accessing and otherwise using TecIO software in source or binary form and its associated documentation.
2. Licensee acknowledges that this is only a limited nonexclusive license. Tecplot is and remains the owner of all titles, rights, and interests in TecIO Software. Title to TecIO and all copies thereof remain with Tecplot. The Materials are copyrighted and are protected by United States copyright laws and international treaty provisions. Licensee will not remove any copyright notice from the Materials. Tecplot does not grant any express or implied right to you under Tecplot patents, copyrights, trademarks, or trade secret information.
3. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, Tecplot hereby grants Licensee a nonexclusive, royalty-free, world-wide license to reproduce, analyze, test, perform and/or display publicly, prepare derivative works, distribute, and otherwise use TecIO alone or in any derivative version, provided, however, that Tecplot's License Agreement and Tecplot's notice of copyright, i.e., "Copyright © 1988-2016 Tecplot, Inc. All rights reserved worldwide." are retained in TecIO alone or in any derivative version prepared by Licensee.
4. In the event Licensee prepares a derivative work that is based on or incorporates TecIO or any part thereof, and wants to publish the derivative work as provided herein, Licensee hereby agrees to provide to all end users of any such work a brief summary of all changes made to TecIO, and to convey to Tecplot a copy of the modified TecIO source code within 30 days after publication of any work containing any such changes.
5. Tecplot is making TecIO available to Licensee on an "AS IS" basis. NO OTHER WARRANTIES. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, TECPLOT, INC. AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NONINFRINGEMENT, WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE, AND THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES. APART FROM THE WARRANTIES STATED ABOVE, TECPLOT, INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY THAT THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL: MEET REQUIREMENTS; PROVIDE UNINTERRUPTED, TIMELY, SECURE, OR ERROR-FREE, USE OF COMPUTERS OR NETWORKS; PROVIDE RESULTS WHICH ARE ACCURATE OR RELIABLE; MEET EXPECTATIONS, OR; CORRECT ANY ERRORS IN THE SOFTWARE. TECPLOT, INC. SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR MISUSE OF THE SOFTWARE OR ANY LOSS OF DATA. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY HAVE OTHERS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE/JURISDICTION TO STATE/JURISDICTION.
6. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL TECPLOT, INC. OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES, EVEN IF TECPLOT, INC. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS SHALL BE TRUE EVEN IN THE EVENT OF THE FAILURE OF AN AGREED REMEDY. IN ANY CASE, TECPLOT, INC.'S ENTIRE LIABILITY FOR CLAIMS ARISING OUT OF USE OF THE SOFTWARE, SERVICE OR ARISING FROM ANY PROVISION OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY LICENSEE FOR THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICE COMPLAINED OF. BECAUSE SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.
7. This License Agreement will automatically terminate upon a material breach of its terms and conditions.
8. Nothing in this License Agreement shall be deemed to create any relationship of agency, partnership, or joint venture between Tecplot and Licensee. This

License Agreement does not grant permission to use Tecplot trademarks or trade name in a trademark sense to endorse or promote products or services of Licensee, or any third party.

9. By copying, installing or otherwise using TecIO, Licensee agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of this License Agreement.

### **Tclap**

Copyright (c) 2003 Michael E. Smoot  
Copyright (c) 2004 Daniel Aarno  
Copyright (c) 2017 Google Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### **Tiff**

Copyright (c) 1988-1997 Sam Leffler  
Copyright (c) 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that (i) the above copyright notices and this permission notice appear in all copies of the software and related documentation, and (ii) the names of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics may not be used in any advertising or publicity relating to the software without the specific, prior written permission of Sam Leffler and Silicon Graphics.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAM LEFFLER OR SILICON GRAPHICS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER OR NOT ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF DAMAGE, AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

### **Utfcpp**

Boost Software License - Version 1.0 - August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to

do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### Vcpkg

Copyright (c) Microsoft Corporation

All rights reserved.

#### MIT License

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED \*AS IS\*, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

### Vtk

/\*\*\*\*\*

Program: Visualization Toolkit  
Module: Copyright.txt

Copyright (c) 1993-2015 Ken Martin, Will Schroeder, Bill Lorensen  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither name of Ken Martin, Will Schroeder, or Bill Lorensen nor the names of any contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

=====\*/

## VtkexodusII

Copyright (c) 2005-2017 National Technology & Engineering Solutions of Sandia, LLC (NTESS). Under the terms of Contract DE-NA0003525 with NTESS, the U.S. Government retains certain rights in this software.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name of NTESS nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Zlib

### ZLIB DATA COMPRESSION LIBRARY

zlib 1.2.12 is a general purpose data compression library. All the code is thread safe. The data format used by the zlib library is described by RFCs (Request for Comments) 1950 to 1952 in the files <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1950> (zlib format), [rfc1951](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1951) (deflate format) and [rfc1952](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1952) (gzip format).

All functions of the compression library are documented in the file `zlib.h` (volunteer to write man pages welcome, contact [zlib@gzip.org](mailto:zlib@gzip.org)). A usage example of the library is given in the file `test/example.c` which also tests that the library is working correctly. Another example is given in the file `test/minigzip.c`. The compression library itself is composed of all source files in the root directory.

To compile all files and run the test program, follow the instructions given at the top of `Makefile.in`. In short `./configure; make test`, and if that goes well, `make install` should work for most flavors of Unix. For Windows, use

one of the special makefiles in win32/ or contrib/vstudio/ . For VMS, use make\_vms.com.

Questions about zlib should be sent to <zlib@zip.org>, or to Gilles Vollant <info@winimage.com> for the Windows DLL version. The zlib home page is <http://zlib.net/> . Before reporting a problem, please check this site to verify that you have the latest version of zlib; otherwise get the latest version and check whether the problem still exists or not.

PLEASE read the zlib FAQ [http://zlib.net/zlib\\_faq.html](http://zlib.net/zlib_faq.html) before asking for help.

Mark Nelson <markn@ieee.org> wrote an article about zlib for the Jan. 1997 issue of Dr. Dobbs's Journal; a copy of the article is available at <http://marknelson.us/1997/01/01/zlib-engine/> .

The changes made in version 1.2.12 are documented in the file ChangeLog.

Unsupported third party contributions are provided in directory contrib/ .

zlib is available in Java using the java.util.zip package, documented at <http://java.sun.com/developer/technicalArticles/Programming/compression/> .

A Perl interface to zlib written by Paul Marquess <pmqs@cpan.org> is available at CPAN (Comprehensive Perl Archive Network) sites, including <http://search.cpan.org/~pmqs/IO-Compress-Zlib/> .

A Python interface to zlib written by A.M. Kuchling <amk@amk.ca> is available in Python 1.5 and later versions, see <http://docs.python.org/library/zlib.html> .

zlib is built into tcl: <http://wiki.tcl.tk/4610> .

An experimental package to read and write files in .zip format, written on top of zlib by Gilles Vollant <info@winimage.com>, is available in the contrib/minizip directory of zlib.

Notes for some targets:

- For Windows DLL versions, please see win32/DLL\_FAQ.txt
- For 64-bit Irix, deflate.c must be compiled without any optimization. With -O, one libpng test fails. The test works in 32 bit mode (with the -n32 compiler flag). The compiler bug has been reported to SGI.
- zlib doesn't work with gcc 2.6.3 on a DEC 3000/300LX under OSF/1 2.1 it works when compiled with cc.
- On Digital Unix 4.0D (formerly OSF/1) on AlphaServer, the cc option -std1 is necessary to get gzprintf working correctly. This is done by configure.
- zlib doesn't work on HP-UX 9.05 with some versions of /bin/cc. It works with other compilers. Use "make test" to check your compiler.
- gzdopen is not supported on RISCOS or BEOS.
- For PalmOs, see <http://palmzlib.sourceforge.net/>

Acknowledgments:

The deflate format used by zlib was defined by Phil Katz. The deflate and zlib specifications were written by L. Peter Deutsch. Thanks to all the people who reported problems and suggested various improvements in zlib; they are too numerous to cite here.

Copyright notice:

(C) 1995-2022 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler



This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly            Mark Adler  
jloup@gzip.org            madler@alumni.caltech.edu

If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code. We make all contributions to and distributions of this project solely in our personal capacity, and are not conveying any rights to any intellectual property of any third parties.

If you redistribute modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes. Please read the FAQ for more information on the distribution of modified source versions.

## Zstd

ZSTD is dual licensed under BSD and GPLv2.

### BSD License

For Zstandard software

Copyright (c) 2016-present, Facebook, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- \* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- \* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- \* Neither the name Facebook nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.,  
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

#### GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not

covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

- a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three

years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other

circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify
it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or
(at your option) any later version.
```

```
This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
GNU General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along
with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc.,
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA.
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

```
Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author
Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'.
This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it
under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.
```

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program
`Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.
```

```
<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989
Ty Coon, President of Vice
```

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License.

## 1.2 Open source licenses

### Apache-2.0

Apache License  
Version 2.0, January 2004  
<http://www.apache.org/licenses/>

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

### 1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable

(except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
  - (a) You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
  - (b) You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and
  - (c) You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
  - (d) If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.
5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS,



WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

APPENDIX: How to apply the Apache License to your work.

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License");  
you may not use this file except in compliance with the License.  
You may obtain a copy of the License at

<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.

**FTL**

The FreeType Project LICENSE

-----  
2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by  
David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

## Introduction

=====

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project.

This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least.

This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

- o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. ('as is' distribution)
- o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. ('royalty-free' usage)
- o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. ('credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project.

Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

```
""
Portions of this software are copyright © <year> The FreeType
Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.
""
```

Please replace <year> with the value from the FreeType version you actually use.

## Legal Terms

=====

## 0. Definitions

-----

Throughout this license, the terms 'package', 'FreeType Project', and 'FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the 'FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release.

'You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where 'using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a 'program' or 'executable'. This program is referred to as 'a program using the FreeType engine'.

This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive.

If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

### 1. No Warranty

-----

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT.

### 2. Redistribution

-----

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

- o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (FTL.TXT) unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files.
- o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

### 3. Advertising

-----

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission.

We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: 'FreeType Project', 'FreeType Engine', 'FreeType library', or 'FreeType Distribution'.

As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

### 4. Contacts

-----

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

o [freetype@nongnu.org](mailto:freetype@nongnu.org)

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

o [freetype-devel@nongnu.org](mailto:freetype-devel@nongnu.org)

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at

<https://www.freetype.org>

## GPL-2.0

### GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.,  
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Lesser General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software

patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of

this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

- a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the

original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY

FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify
it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or
(at your option) any later version.
```

```
This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
GNU General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along
with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc.,
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA.
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

```
Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author
Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'.
This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it
under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.
```

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program
`Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.
```



<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989  
Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License.

### GPL-3.0

GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
Version 3, 29 June 2007

Copyright (C) 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <<https://fsf.org/>>  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

#### Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works.

The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program--to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it.

For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions.

Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we

stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users.

Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

#### TERMS AND CONDITIONS

##### 0. Definitions.

"This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

"Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks.

"The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations.

To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work.

A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program.

To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well.

To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying.

An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided), that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion.

##### 1. Source Code.

The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work.

A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language.

The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an

implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it.

The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work.

The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source.

The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work.

## 2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law.

You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you.

Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary.

## 3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures.

When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures.

## 4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you

receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee.

#### 5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date.
- b) The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices".
- c) You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it.
- d) If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so.

A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate.

#### 6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways:

- a) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange.
- b) Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge.

c) Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b.

d) Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements.

e) Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d.

A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work.

A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product regardless of whether the product has substantial commercial, industrial or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product.

"Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source. The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made.

If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM).

The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network.

Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided,

in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying.

#### 7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions.

When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms:

- a) Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or
- b) Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or
- c) Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or
- d) Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or
- e) Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or
- f) Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors.

All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying.

If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms.

Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way.

#### 8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11).

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10.

#### 9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of using peer-to-peer transmission to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance. However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so.

#### 10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

An "entity transaction" is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party's predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts.

You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it.

#### 11. Patents.

A "contributor" is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor's "contributor version".

A contributor's "essential patent claims" are all patent claims

owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, "control" includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License.

Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor's essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version.

In the following three paragraphs, a "patent license" is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To "grant" such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party.

If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. "Knowingly relying" means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient's use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid.

If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it.

A patent license is "discriminatory" if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the non-exercise of one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who would receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28 March 2007.

Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law.

#### 12. No Surrender of Others' Freedom.

If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you



to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program.

#### 13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such.

#### 14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program.

Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version.

#### 15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

#### 16. Limitation of Liability.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### 17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal effect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the

Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
(at your option) any later version.
```

```
This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
GNU General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
along with this program. If not, see <https://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

```
<program> Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'.
This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it
under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.
```

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program's commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an "about box".

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see [<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/>](https://www.gnu.org/licenses/).

The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read [<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/why-not-lgpl.html>](https://www.gnu.org/licenses/why-not-lgpl.html).

#### LGPL-2.1

#### GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA  
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies  
of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts

as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

#### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages--typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- a) The modified work must itself be a software library.
- b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

- a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked

with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

b) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.

c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are

prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free



Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

#### NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

#### END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

##### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>
```

```
This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
```

```
This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
Lesser General Public License for more details.
```

```
You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
Foundation, Inc., 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

```
Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the
library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.
```

```
<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990
```

Ty Coon, President of Vice

That's all there is to it!

## MPL-2.0

Mozilla Public License Version 2.0  
=====

### 1. Definitions -----

#### 1.1. "Contributor"

means each individual or legal entity that creates, contributes to the creation of, or owns Covered Software.

#### 1.2. "Contributor Version"

means the combination of the Contributions of others (if any) used by a Contributor and that particular Contributor's Contribution.

#### 1.3. "Contribution"

means Covered Software of a particular Contributor.

#### 1.4. "Covered Software"

means Source Code Form to which the initial Contributor has attached the notice in Exhibit A, the Executable Form of such Source Code Form, and Modifications of such Source Code Form, in each case including portions thereof.

#### 1.5. "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses"

means

(a) that the initial Contributor has attached the notice described in Exhibit B to the Covered Software; or

(b) that the Covered Software was made available under the terms of version 1.1 or earlier of the License, but not also under the terms of a Secondary License.

#### 1.6. "Executable Form"

means any form of the work other than Source Code Form.

#### 1.7. "Larger Work"

means a work that combines Covered Software with other material, in a separate file or files, that is not Covered Software.

#### 1.8. "License"

means this document.

#### 1.9. "Licensable"

means having the right to grant, to the maximum extent possible, whether at the time of the initial grant or subsequently, any and all of the rights conveyed by this License.

#### 1.10. "Modifications"

means any of the following:

(a) any file in Source Code Form that results from an addition to, deletion from, or modification of the contents of Covered Software; or

(b) any new file in Source Code Form that contains any Covered Software.

#### 1.11. "Patent Claims" of a Contributor

means any patent claim(s), including without limitation, method, process, and apparatus claims, in any patent Licensable by such Contributor that would be infringed, but for the grant of the License, by the making, using, selling, offering for sale, having

made, import, or transfer of either its Contributions or its Contributor Version.

1.12. "Secondary License"

means either the GNU General Public License, Version 2.0, the GNU Lesser General Public License, Version 2.1, the GNU Affero General Public License, Version 3.0, or any later versions of those licenses.

1.13. "Source Code Form"

means the form of the work preferred for making modifications.

1.14. "You" (or "Your")

means an individual or a legal entity exercising rights under this License. For legal entities, "You" includes any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with You. For purposes of this definition, "control" means (a) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (b) ownership of more than fifty percent (50%) of the outstanding shares or beneficial ownership of such entity.

2. License Grants and Conditions

-----

2.1. Grants

Each Contributor hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-exclusive license:

- (a) under intellectual property rights (other than patent or trademark) Licensable by such Contributor to use, reproduce, make available, modify, display, perform, distribute, and otherwise exploit its Contributions, either on an unmodified basis, with Modifications, or as part of a Larger Work; and
- (b) under Patent Claims of such Contributor to make, use, sell, offer for sale, have made, import, and otherwise transfer either its Contributions or its Contributor Version.

2.2. Effective Date

The licenses granted in Section 2.1 with respect to any Contribution become effective for each Contribution on the date the Contributor first distributes such Contribution.

2.3. Limitations on Grant Scope

The licenses granted in this Section 2 are the only rights granted under this License. No additional rights or licenses will be implied from the distribution or licensing of Covered Software under this License. Notwithstanding Section 2.1(b) above, no patent license is granted by a Contributor:

- (a) for any code that a Contributor has removed from Covered Software; or
- (b) for infringements caused by: (i) Your and any other third party's modifications of Covered Software, or (ii) the combination of its Contributions with other software (except as part of its Contributor Version); or
- (c) under Patent Claims infringed by Covered Software in the absence of its Contributions.

This License does not grant any rights in the trademarks, service marks, or logos of any Contributor (except as may be necessary to comply with the notice requirements in Section 3.4).

2.4. Subsequent Licenses

No Contributor makes additional grants as a result of Your choice to distribute the Covered Software under a subsequent version of this License (see Section 10.2) or under the terms of a Secondary License (if permitted under the terms of Section 3.3).

#### 2.5. Representation

Each Contributor represents that the Contributor believes its Contributions are its original creation(s) or it has sufficient rights to grant the rights to its Contributions conveyed by this License.

#### 2.6. Fair Use

This License is not intended to limit any rights You have under applicable copyright doctrines of fair use, fair dealing, or other equivalents.

#### 2.7. Conditions

Sections 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4 are conditions of the licenses granted in Section 2.1.

### 3. Responsibilities

-----

#### 3.1. Distribution of Source Form

All distribution of Covered Software in Source Code Form, including any Modifications that You create or to which You contribute, must be under the terms of this License. You must inform recipients that the Source Code Form of the Covered Software is governed by the terms of this License, and how they can obtain a copy of this License. You may not attempt to alter or restrict the recipients' rights in the Source Code Form.

#### 3.2. Distribution of Executable Form

If You distribute Covered Software in Executable Form then:

- (a) such Covered Software must also be made available in Source Code Form, as described in Section 3.1, and You must inform recipients of the Executable Form how they can obtain a copy of such Source Code Form by reasonable means in a timely manner, at a charge no more than the cost of distribution to the recipient; and
- (b) You may distribute such Executable Form under the terms of this License, or sublicense it under different terms, provided that the license for the Executable Form does not attempt to limit or alter the recipients' rights in the Source Code Form under this License.

#### 3.3. Distribution of a Larger Work

You may create and distribute a Larger Work under terms of Your choice, provided that You also comply with the requirements of this License for the Covered Software. If the Larger Work is a combination of Covered Software with a work governed by one or more Secondary Licenses, and the Covered Software is not Incompatible With Secondary Licenses, this License permits You to additionally distribute such Covered Software under the terms of such Secondary License(s), so that the recipient of the Larger Work may, at their option, further distribute the Covered Software under the terms of either this License or such Secondary License(s).

#### 3.4. Notices

You may not remove or alter the substance of any license notices (including copyright notices, patent notices, disclaimers of warranty, or limitations of liability) contained within the Source Code Form of the Covered Software, except that You may alter any license notices to

the extent required to remedy known factual inaccuracies.

### 3.5. Application of Additional Terms

You may choose to offer, and to charge a fee for, warranty, support, indemnity or liability obligations to one or more recipients of Covered Software. However, You may do so only on Your own behalf, and not on behalf of any Contributor. You must make it absolutely clear that any such warranty, support, indemnity, or liability obligation is offered by You alone, and You hereby agree to indemnify every Contributor for any liability incurred by such Contributor as a result of warranty, support, indemnity or liability terms You offer. You may include additional disclaimers of warranty and limitations of liability specific to any jurisdiction.

### 4. Inability to Comply Due to Statute or Regulation

-----

If it is impossible for You to comply with any of the terms of this License with respect to some or all of the Covered Software due to statute, judicial order, or regulation then You must: (a) comply with the terms of this License to the maximum extent possible; and (b) describe the limitations and the code they affect. Such description must be placed in a text file included with all distributions of the Covered Software under this License. Except to the extent prohibited by statute or regulation, such description must be sufficiently detailed for a recipient of ordinary skill to be able to understand it.

### 5. Termination

-----

5.1. The rights granted under this License will terminate automatically if You fail to comply with any of its terms. However, if You become compliant, then the rights granted under this License from a particular Contributor are reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until such Contributor explicitly and finally terminates Your grants, and (b) on an ongoing basis, if such Contributor fails to notify You of the non-compliance by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after You have come back into compliance. Moreover, Your grants from a particular Contributor are reinstated on an ongoing basis if such Contributor notifies You of the non-compliance by some reasonable means, this is the first time You have received notice of non-compliance with this License from such Contributor, and You become compliant prior to 30 days after Your receipt of the notice.

5.2. If You initiate litigation against any entity by asserting a patent infringement claim (excluding declaratory judgment actions, counter-claims, and cross-claims) alleging that a Contributor Version directly or indirectly infringes any patent, then the rights granted to You by any and all Contributors for the Covered Software under Section 2.1 of this License shall terminate.

5.3. In the event of termination under Sections 5.1 or 5.2 above, all end user license agreements (excluding distributors and resellers) which have been validly granted by You or Your distributors under this License prior to termination shall survive termination.

```
*****
*
* 6. Disclaimer of Warranty
* -----
*
* Covered Software is provided under this License on an "as is"
* basis, without warranty of any kind, either expressed, implied, or
* statutory, including, without limitation, warranties that the
* Covered Software is free of defects, merchantable, fit for a
* particular purpose or non-infringing. The entire risk as to the
* quality and performance of the Covered Software is with You.
* Should any Covered Software prove defective in any respect, You
* (not any Contributor) assume the cost of any necessary servicing,
*
```

```
* repair, or correction. This disclaimer of warranty constitutes an
* essential part of this License. No use of any Covered Software is
* authorized under this License except under this disclaimer.
*
```

```
*****
```

```
*****
```

#### \* 7. Limitation of Liability \*

```
* ----- *
```

```
*
* Under no circumstances and under no legal theory, whether tort
* (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, shall any
* Contributor, or anyone who distributes Covered Software as
* permitted above, be liable to You for any direct, indirect,
* special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character
* including, without limitation, damages for lost profits, loss of
* goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any
* and all other commercial damages or losses, even if such party
* shall have been informed of the possibility of such damages. This
* limitation of liability shall not apply to liability for death or
* personal injury resulting from such party's negligence to the
* extent applicable law prohibits such limitation. Some
* jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of
* incidental or consequential damages, so this exclusion and
* limitation may not apply to You.
*
```

```
*****
```

#### 8. Litigation

```
-----
```

Any litigation relating to this License may be brought only in the courts of a jurisdiction where the defendant maintains its principal place of business and such litigation shall be governed by laws of that jurisdiction, without reference to its conflict-of-law provisions. Nothing in this Section shall prevent a party's ability to bring cross-claims or counter-claims.

#### 9. Miscellaneous

```
-----
```

This License represents the complete agreement concerning the subject matter hereof. If any provision of this License is held to be unenforceable, such provision shall be reformed only to the extent necessary to make it enforceable. Any law or regulation which provides that the language of a contract shall be construed against the drafter shall not be used to construe this License against a Contributor.

#### 10. Versions of the License

```
-----
```

##### 10.1. New Versions

Mozilla Foundation is the license steward. Except as provided in Section 10.3, no one other than the license steward has the right to modify or publish new versions of this License. Each version will be given a distinguishing version number.

##### 10.2. Effect of New Versions

You may distribute the Covered Software under the terms of the version of the License under which You originally received the Covered Software, or under the terms of any subsequent version published by the license steward.

##### 10.3. Modified Versions

If you create software not governed by this License, and you want to create a new license for such software, you may create and use a

modified version of this License if you rename the license and remove any references to the name of the license steward (except to note that such modified license differs from this License).

#### 10.4. Distributing Source Code Form that is Incompatible With Secondary Licenses

If You choose to distribute Source Code Form that is Incompatible With Secondary Licenses under the terms of this version of the License, the notice described in Exhibit B of this License must be attached.

##### Exhibit A - Source Code Form License Notice

-----

This Source Code Form is subject to the terms of the Mozilla Public License, v. 2.0. If a copy of the MPL was not distributed with this file, You can obtain one at <http://mozilla.org/MPL/2.0/>.

If it is not possible or desirable to put the notice in a particular file, then You may include the notice in a location (such as a LICENSE file in a relevant directory) where a recipient would be likely to look for such a notice.

You may add additional accurate notices of copyright ownership.

##### Exhibit B - "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses" Notice

-----

This Source Code Form is "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses", as defined by the Mozilla Public License, v. 2.0.

## Zlib

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.